Programmability Configuration Guide for Cisco NCS 5500 Series Routers, IOS XR Release 7.7.x

First Published: 2022-07-01

Americas Headquarters
Cisco Systems, Inc.
170 West Tasman Drive
San Jose, CA 95134-1706
USA
http://www.cisco.com
Tel: 408 526-4000
800 553-NETS (6387)
Fax: 408 527-0883

© 2022 Cisco Systems, Inc. All rights reserved.

CONTENTS

PART I **YANG Data Models** 7

CHAPTER 1 **New and Changed Feature Information** 1

New and Changed Programmability Features 1

CHAPTER 2 **Drive Network Automation Using Programmable YANG Data Models** 3

YANG Data Model 4

Access the Data Models 8

CLI to Yang Mapping Tool 9

Communication Protocols 10

NETCONF Protocol 11

gRPC Protocol 11

YANG Actions 11

CHAPTER 3 **Use NETCONF Protocol to Define Network Operations with Data Models** 17

NETCONF Operations 20

Retrieve Default Parameters Using with-defaults Capability 24

Retrieve Transaction ID for NSO Operations 30

Set Router Clock Using Data Model in a NETCONF Session 32

CHAPTER 4 **Use gRPC Protocol to Define Network Operations with Data Models** 37

gRPC Operations 40

gRPC Authentication Modes 41

Authenticate gRPC Services 42

gRPC over UNIX Domain Sockets 43

gRPC Network Management Interface 45

gNMI Wildcard in Schema Path 45
gRPC Network Operations Interface 50
gNOI RPCs 50
Configure Interfaces Using Data Models in a gRPC Session 55

CHAPTER 5 Use Service Layer API to Bring your Controller on Cisco IOS XR Router 63
Get to Know Service Layer API 63
Enable Service Layer 66
Write Your Service Layer Client API 67

CHAPTER 6 Enhancements to Data Models 69
NETCONF Accounting Logs 69
Enhancements to Sensor Paths 72
Install Label in oc-platform Data Model 74
OAM for MPLS and SR-MPLS in mpls-ping and mpls-traceroute Data Models 75
OpenConfig YANG Model:MACsec 80

CHAPTER 7 Unified Data Models 87
Unified Configuration Models 87

PART II Automation Scripts 95

CHAPTER 8 New and Changed Feature Information 97

CHAPTER 9 Achieve Network Operational Simplicity Using Automation Scripts 99
Explore the Types of Automation Scripts 99

CHAPTER 10 Config Scripts 101
Workflow to Run Config Scripts 102
Enable Config Scripts Feature 103
Download the Script to the Router 104
Configure Checksum for Config Script 105
Validate or Commit Configuration to Invoke Config Script 108

Manage Scripts 110
Delete Config Script from the Router 110
Control Priority When Running Multiple Scripts 111
Example: Validate and Activate an SSH Config Script 112
Scenario 1: Validate the Script Without SSH Configuration 113
Scenario 2: Configure SSH and Validate the Script 114
Scenario 3: Set Rate-limit Value to Default Value in the Script 115
Scenario 4: Delete SSH Server Configuration 116

CHAPTER 11 **Exec Scripts** 117
Workflow to Run an Exec Script 117
Download the Script to the Router 119
Update Scripts from a Remote Server 120
Configure Checksum for Exec Script 123
Run the Exec Script 125
View the Script Execution Details 126
Manage Scripts 128
Delete Exec Script from the Router 128
Example: Exec Script to Verify Bundle Interfaces 129

CHAPTER 12 **Process Scripts** 135
Workflow to Run Process Scripts 135
Download the Script to the Router 138
Configure Checksum for Process Script 139
Register the Process Script as an Application 141
Activate the Process Script 142
Obtain Operational Data and Logs 143
Managing Actions on Process Script 145
Example: Check CPU Utilization at Regular Intervals Using Process Script 145

CHAPTER 13 **EEM Scripts** 149
Workflow to Run Event Scripts 149
Download the Script to the Router 151
Define Trigger Conditions for an Event 153

Create Actions for Events 156
Create a Policy Map of Events and Actions 157
View Operational Status of Event Scripts 158
Example: Shut Inactive Bundle Interfaces Using EEM Script 161

CHAPTER 14 Model-Driven Command-Line Interface 163
Model-Driven CLI to Display Data Model Structure 163
Model-Driven CLI to Display Running Configuration in XML and JSON Formats 167

CHAPTER 15 Manage Automation Scripts Using YANG RPCs 171
Manage Common Script Actions Using YANG RPCs 171
Manage Exec Scripts Using RPCs 174
Manage EEM Script Using RPCs 177
Operational Model for EEM Script 180

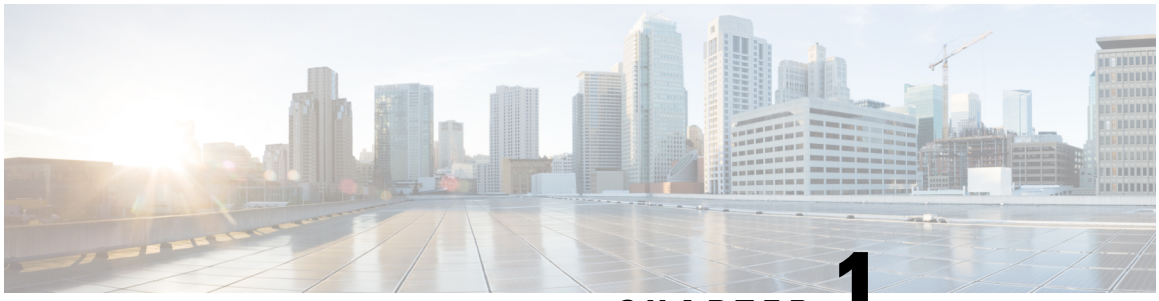
CHAPTER 16 Script Infrastructure and Sample Templates 185
Cisco IOS XR Python Packages 186
Cisco IOS XR Python Libraries 188
Sample Script Templates 190
Use Automation Scripts to Interact with the Router via gNMI RPCs 193
Xrcli_helper Python Module 197
Xrcli_helper Script APIs 198
Xrlog Python Module 200
getSysLogger Script APIs 201
Script Logger API 206

CHAPTER 17 Troubleshoot Automation Scripts 207
Collect Debug Logs 207

PART I

YANG Data Models

- New and Changed Feature Information, on page 1
- Drive Network Automation Using Programmable YANG Data Models, on page 3
- Use NETCONF Protocol to Define Network Operations with Data Models, on page 17
- Use gRPC Protocol to Define Network Operations with Data Models, on page 37
- Use Service Layer API to Bring your Controller on Cisco IOS XR Router, on page 63
- Enhancements to Data Models, on page 69
- Unified Data Models, on page 87



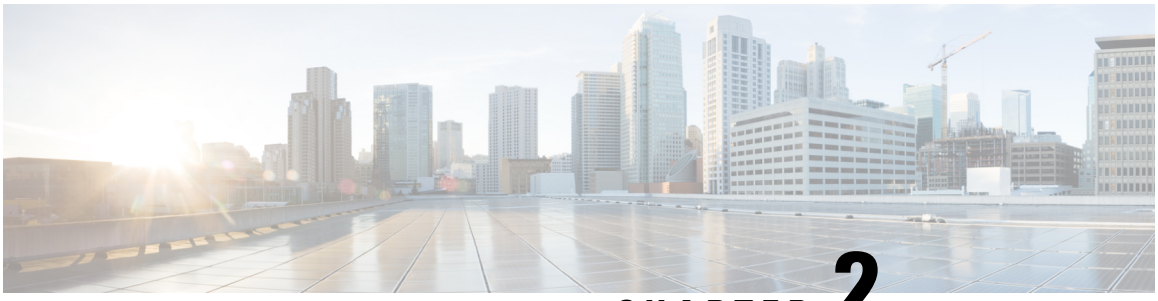
CHAPTER 1

New and Changed Feature Information

This section lists all the new and changed features for the Programmability Configuration Guide.

- New and Changed Programmability Features, on page 1

New and Changed Programmability Features



CHAPTER 2

Drive Network Automation Using Programmable YANG Data Models

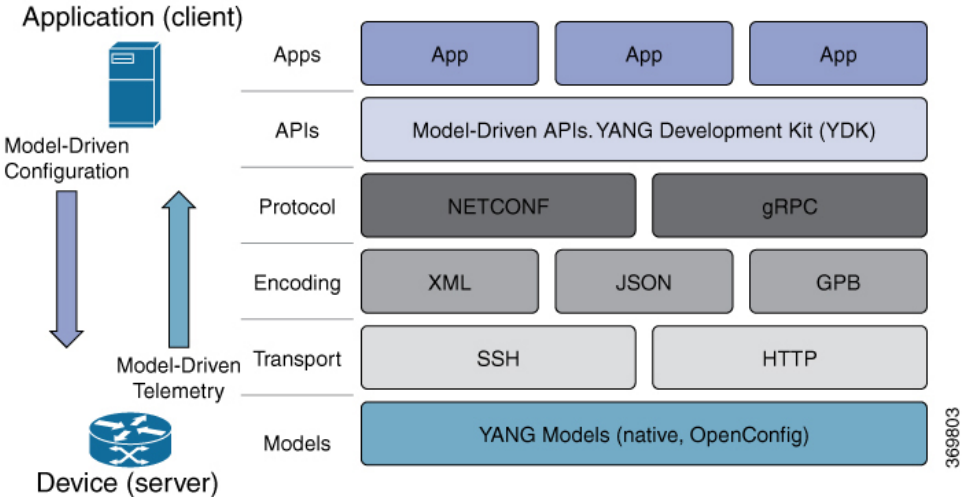
Typically, a network operation center is a heterogeneous mix of various devices at multiple layers of the network. Such network centers require bulk automated configurations to be accomplished seamlessly. CLIs are widely used for configuring and extracting the operational details of a router. But the general mechanism of CLI scraping is not flexible and optimal. Small changes in the configuration require rewriting scripts multiple times. Bulk configuration changes through CLIs are cumbersome and error-prone. These limitations restrict automation and scale. To overcome these limitations, you need an automated mechanism to manage your network.

Cisco IOS XR supports a programmatic way of configuring and collecting operational data of a network device using data models. They replace the process of manual configuration, which is proprietary, and highly text-based. The data models are written in an industry-defined language and is used to automate configuration task and retrieve operational data across heterogeneous devices in a network. Although configurations using CLIs are easier and human-readable, automating the configuration using model-driven programmability results in scalability.

Model-driven programmability provides a simple, flexible and rich framework for device programmability. This programmability framework provides multiple choices to interface with an IOS XR device in terms of transport, protocol and encoding. These choices are decoupled from the models for greater flexibility.

The following image shows the layers in model-driven programmability:

Figure 1: Model-driven Programmability Layers



Data models provides access to the capabilities of the devices in a network using Network Configuration Protocol (NETCONF Protocol) or google-defined Remote Procedure Calls (gRPC Protocol). The operations on the router are carried out by the protocols using YANG models to automate and programme operations in a network.

Benefits of Data Models

Configuring routers using data models overcomes drawbacks posed by traditional router management because the data models:

- Provide a common model for configuration and operational state data, and perform NETCONF actions.
- Use protocols to communicate with the routers to get, manipulate and delete configurations in a network.
- Automate configuration and operation of multiple routers across the network.

This article describes how you benefit from using data models to programmatically manage your network operations.

- YANG Data Model, on page 4
- Access the Data Models, on page 8
- CLI to Yang Mapping Tool, on page 9
- Communication Protocols, on page 10
- YANG Actions, on page 11

YANG Data Model

A YANG module defines a data model through the data of the router, and the hierarchical organization and constraints on that data. Each module is uniquely identified by a namespace URL. The YANG models describe the configuration and operational data, perform actions, remote procedure calls, and notifications for network devices.

The YANG models must be obtained from the router. The models define a valid structure for the data that is exchanged between the router and the client. The models are used by NETCONF and gRPC-enabled applications.

Note gRPC is supported only in 64-bit platforms.

- **Cisco-specific models:** For a list of supported models and their representation, see Native models.
- **Common models:** These models are industry-wide standard YANG models from standard bodies, such as IETF and IEEE. These models are also called Open Config (OC) models. Like synthesized models, the OC models have separate YANG models defined for configuration data and operational data, and actions.

YANG models can be: For a list of supported OC models and their representation, see OC models.

All data models are stamped with semantic version `1.0.0` as baseline from release 7.0.1 and later.

For more details about YANG, refer RFC 6020 and 6087.

Data models handle the following types of requirements on routers (RFC 6244):

- **Configuration data:** A set of writable data that is required to transform a system from an initial default state into its current state. For example, configuring entries of the IP routing tables, configuring the interface MTU to use a specific value, configuring an ethernet interface to run at a given speed, and so on.
- **Operational state data:** A set of data that is obtained by the system at runtime and influences the behavior of the system in a manner similar to configuration data. However, in contrast to configuration data, operational state data is transient. The data is modified by interactions with internal components or other systems using specialized protocols. For example, entries obtained from routing protocols such as OSPF, attributes of the network interfaces, and so on.
- **Actions:** A set of NETCONF actions that support robust network-wide configuration transactions. When a change is attempted that affects multiple devices, the NETCONF actions simplify the management of failure scenarios, resulting in the ability to have transactions that will dependably succeed or fail atomically.

For more information about Data Models, see RFC 6244.

YANG data models can be represented in a hierarchical, tree-based structure with nodes. This representation makes the models easy to understand.

Each feature has a defined YANG model, which is synthesized from schemas. A model in a tree format includes:

- Top level nodes and their subtrees
- Subtrees that augment nodes in other YANG models
- Custom RPCs

YANG defines four node types. Each node has a name. Depending on the node type, the node either defines a value or contains a set of child nodes. The nodes types for data modeling are:

- leaf node - contains a single value of a specific type
- leaf-list node - contains a sequence of leaf nodes

- list node - contains a sequence of leaf-list entries, each of which is uniquely identified by one or more key leaves
- container node - contains a grouping of related nodes that have only child nodes, which can be any of the four node types

Structure of CDP Data Model

Cisco Discovery Protocol (CDP) configuration has an inherent augmented model (interface-configuration). The augmentation indicates that CDP can be configured at both the global configuration level and the interface configuration level. The data model for CDP interface manager in tree structure is:

```
module: Cisco-IOS-XR-cdp-cfg
   +--rw cdp
      +--rw timer?               uint32
      +--rw advertise-v1-only?   empty
      +--rw enable?              boolean
      +--rw hold-time?           uint32
      +--rw log-adjacency?       empty
augment /a1:interface-configurations/a1:interface-configuration:
   +--rw cdp
      +--rw enable?   empty
```

In the CDP YANG model, the augmentation is expressed as:

```
augment "/a1:interface-configurations/a1:interface-configuration" {
    container cdp {
      description "Interface specific CDP configuration";
      leaf enable {
        type empty;
        description "Enable or disable CDP on an interface";
      }
    }
    description
      "This augment extends the configuration data of
      'Cisco-IOS-XR-ifmgr-cfg'";
  }
```

CDP Operational YANG:

The structure of a data model can be explored using a YANG validator tool such as pyang and the data model can be formatted in a tree structure. The following example shows the CDP operational model in tree format.

```
module: Cisco-IOS-XR-cdp-oper
   +--ro cdp
      +--ro nodes
         +--ro node* [node-name]
            +--ro neighbors
            |  +--ro details
            |  |  +--ro detail*
            |  |     +--ro interface-name?   xr:Interface-name
            |  |     +--ro device-id?        string
            |  |     +--ro cdp-neighbor*
            |  |        +--ro detail
            |  |        |  +--ro network-addresses
            |  |        |  |  +--ro cdp-addr-entry*
            |  |        |  |     +--ro address
            |  |        |  |        +--ro address-type?   Cdp-l3-addr-protocol
            |  |        |  |        +--ro ipv4-address?   inet:ipv4-address
```

```
|   |         |  |        +--ro ipv6-address?   In6-addr
|   |         |  +--ro protocol-hello-list
|   |         |  |  +--ro cdp-prot-hello-entry*
|   |         |  |     +--ro hello-message?   yang:hex-string
|   |         |  +--ro version?               string
|   |         |  +--ro vtp-domain?            string
|   |         |  +--ro native-vlan?           uint32
|   |         |  +--ro duplex?                Cdp-duplex
|   |         |  +--ro system-name?           string
|   |         +--ro receiving-interface-name?   xr:Interface-name
|   |         +--ro device-id?                  string
|   |         +--ro port-id?                    string
|   |         +--ro header-version?             uint8
|   |         +--ro hold-time?                  uint16
|   |         +--ro capabilities?               string
|   |         +--ro platform?                   string

..... (snipped) .....
```

Components of a YANG Module

A YANG module defines a single data model. However, a module can reference definitions in other modules and sub-modules by using one of these statements:

The YANG models configure a feature, retrieve the operational state of the router, and perform actions.

- **import** imports external modules
- **include** includes one or more sub-modules
- **augment** provides augmentations to another module, and defines the placement of new nodes in the data model hierarchy
- **when** defines conditions under which new nodes are valid
- **prefix** references definitions in an imported module

Note The gRPC YANG path or JSON data is based on YANG module name and not YANG namespace.

YANG Module Set

You can provide structured, protocol-driven access to a network management configuration and its state information using YANG models. By default, all YANG models (native and OpenConfig) are accessible. You can activate a desired module-set using the **yang-server module-set** command to access a specific set of YANG modules.

Accessing the deprecated Cisco IOS XR YANG models generates a syslog message only once until the YANG agent (NETCONF or Emsd) restarts. After a restart, the message is generated again. For deprecated Cisco IOS XR data models, see Backward InCompatible (BIC) folder from Deprecated XPaths.

Configure YANG Module Set

To activate a specific set of YANG module, use the **yang-server module-set** command.

```
Router# config
Router(config)# yang-server module-set XR-only
Router# end
```

Access the Data Models

You can access the Cisco IOS XR native and OpenConfig data models from GitHub, a software development platform that provides hosting services for version control.

CLI-based YANG data models, also known as unified configuration models were introduced in Cisco IOS XR, Release 7.0.1. The new set of unified YANG config models are built in alignment with the CLI commands.

You can also access the supported data models from the router. The router ships with the YANG files that define the data models. Use NETCONF protocol to view the data models available on the router using `ietf-netconf-monitoring` request.

```
<rpc xmlns="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:netconf:base:1.0" message-id="101">
 <get>
   <filter type="subtree">
     <netconf-state xmlns="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:yang:ietf-netconf-monitoring">
     <schemas/>
     </netconf-state>
   </filter>
 </get>
</rpc>
```

All the supported YANG models are displayed as response to the RPC request.

```
<rpc-reply message-id="16a79f87-1d47-4f7a-a16a-9405e6d865b9"
xmlns="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:netconf:base:1.0">
<data>
<netconf-state xmlns="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:yang:ietf-netconf-monitoring">
<schemas>
<schema>
    <identifier>Cisco-IOS-XR-crypto-sam-oper</identifier>
    <version>1.0.0</version>
    <format>yang</format>
    <namespace>http://cisco.com/ns/yang/Cisco-IOS-XR-crypto-sam-oper</namespace>
    <location>NETCONF</location>
</schema>
<schema>
    <identifier>Cisco-IOS-XR-crypto-sam-oper-sub1</identifier>
    <version>1.0.0</version>
    <format>yang</format>
    <namespace>http://cisco.com/ns/yang/Cisco-IOS-XR-crypto-sam-oper</namespace>
    <location>NETCONF</location>
</schema>
<schema>
    <identifier>Cisco-IOS-XR-snmp-agent-oper</identifier>
    <version>1.0.0</version>
    <format>yang</format>
    <namespace>http://cisco.com/ns/yang/Cisco-IOS-XR-snmp-agent-oper</namespace>
    <location>NETCONF</location>
</schema>

------------<snipped>--------------
<schema>
    <identifier>openconfig-aft-types</identifier>
    <version>1.0.0</version>
```

```
    <format>yang</format>
    <namespace>http://openconfig.net/yang/fib-types</namespace>
    <location>NETCONF</location>
</schema>
<schema>
    <identifier>openconfig-mpls-ldp</identifier>
    <version>1.0.0</version>
    <format>yang</format>
    <namespace>http://openconfig.net/yang/ldp</namespace>
    <location>NETCONF</location>
</schema>
</schemas>
</netconf-state>
------------<truncated>--------------
```

CLI to Yang Mapping Tool

Table 1: Feature History Table

Feature Name	Release Information	Description
CLI to YANG Mapping Tool	Release 7.4.1	This tool provides a quick reference for IOS XR CLIs and a corresponding YANG data model that could be used. New command introduced for this feature: **yang describe**

Note Starting from Release 7.11.1, the command **yang-describe** in the Command Line Interface (CLI) is deprecated.

CLI commands are widely used for configuring and extracting the operational details of a router. But bulk configuration changes through CLIs are cumbersome and error-prone. These limitations restrict automation and scale. To overcome these limitations, you need an automated mechanism to manage your network. Cisco IOS XR supports a programmatic way of configuring and collecting operational data of a router using Yang data models. However, owing to the large number of CLI commands, it is cumbersome to determine the mapping between the CLI command and its associated data model.

The CLI to Yang describer tool is a component in the IOS XR software. It helps in mapping the CLI command with its equivalent data models. With this tool, network automation using data models can be adapted with ease.

The tool simulates the CLI command and displays the following data:

- Yang model mapping to the CLI command
- List of the associated sensor paths

To retrieve the Yang equivalent of a CLI, use the following command:

```
Router#yang-describe ?
  configuration  Describe configuration commands(cisco-support)
  operational    Describe operational commands(cisco-support)
```

The tool supports description of both operational and configurational commands.

Example: Configuration Data

In the following example, the Yang paths for configuring the MPLS label range with minimum and maximum static values are displayed:

```
Router#yang-describe configuration mpls label range table 0 34000 749999 static 34000 99999
Mon May 10 12:37:27.192 UTC
YANG Paths:
  Cisco-IOS-XR-um-mpls-lsd-cfg:mpls/label/range/table-0
  Cisco-IOS-XR-mpls-lsd-cfg:mpls-lsd/label-databases/label-database/label-range
  Cisco-IOS-XR-mpls-lsd-cfg:mpls-lsd/label-databases/label-database/label-range/minvalue
  Cisco-IOS-XR-mpls-lsd-cfg:mpls-lsd/label-databases/label-database/label-range/max-value

Cisco-IOS-XR-mpls-lsd-cfg:mpls-lsd/label-databases/label-database/label-range/min-static-value


Cisco-IOS-XR-mpls-lsd-cfg:mpls-lsd/label-databases/label-database/label-range/max-static-value
```

In the following example, the Yang paths for configuring the gRPC address are displayed:

```
Router#yang-describe configuration grpc address-family ipv4
Mon May 10 12:39:56.652 UTC
YANG Paths:
  Cisco-IOS-XR-man-ems-cfg:grpc/enable
  Cisco-IOS-XR-man-ems-cfg:grpc/address-family
```

Example: Operational Data

The operational data includes support for the `show` CLI commands.

The example shows the Yang paths to retrieve the operational data for MPLS interfaces:

```
Router#yang-describe operational show mpls interfaces
Mon May 10 12:34:05.198 UTC
YANG Paths:
  Cisco-IOS-XR-mpls-lsd-oper:mpls-lsd/interfaces/interface
```

The following example shows the Yang paths to retrieve the operational data for Virtual Router Redundancy Protocol (VRRP):

```
Router#yang-describe operational show vrrp brief
Mon May 10 12:34:38.041 UTC
YANG Paths:
  Cisco-IOS-XR-ipv4-vrrp-oper:vrrp/ipv4/virtual-routers/virtual-router
  Cisco-IOS-XR-ipv4-vrrp-oper:vrrp/ipv6/virtual-routers/virtual-router
```

Communication Protocols

Communication protocols establish connections between the router and the client. The protocols help the client to consume the YANG data models to, in turn, automate and programme network operations.

YANG uses one of these protocols:

- Network Configuration Protocol (NETCONF)
- RPC framework (gRPC) by Google

Note gRPC is supported only in 64-bit platforms.

The transport and encoding mechanisms for these two protocols are shown in the table:

Protocol	Transport	Encoding/ Decoding
NETCONF	ssh	xml
gRPC	http/2	json

NETCONF Protocol

NETCONF provides mechanisms to install, manipulate, or delete the configuration on network devices. It uses an Extensible Markup Language (XML)-based data encoding for the configuration data, as well as protocol messages. You use a simple NETCONF RPC-based (Remote Procedure Call) mechanism to facilitate communication between a client and a server. To get started with issuing NETCONF RPCs to configure network features using data models

gRPC Protocol

gRPC is an open-source RPC framework. It is based on Protocol Buffers (Protobuf), which is an open source binary serialization protocol. gRPC provides a flexible, efficient, automated mechanism for serializing structured data, like XML, but is smaller and simpler to use. You define the structure by defining protocol buffer message types in `.proto` files. Each protocol buffer message is a small logical record of information, containing a series of name-value pairs. To get started with issuing NETCONF RPCs to configure network features using data models

Note gRPC is supported only in 64-bit platforms.

YANG Actions

IOS XR and System Admin actions are RPC statements that trigger an operation or execute a command on the router. Theses actions are defined as YANG models using RPC statements. An action is executed when the router receives the corresponding NETCONF RPC or gRPC request. Once the router executes an action, it replies with a NETCONF RPC or gRPC response.

For example, **ping** command is a supported action. That means, a YANG model is defined for the **ping** command using RPC statements. This command can be executed on the router by initiating the corresponding NETCONF RPC or gRPC request.

Note NETCONF supports XML format, and gRPC supports JSON format.

The following table shows a list of actions. For the full list of supported actions, query the device or see the YANG Data Models Navigator.

Actions	YANG Models
logmsg	Cisco-IOS-XR-syslog-act
snmp	Cisco-IOS-XR-snmp-test-trap-act
rollback	Cisco-IOS-XR-cfgmgr-rollback-act
ping	Cisco-IOS-XR-ping-act Cisco-IOS-XR-ipv4-ping-act Cisco-IOS-XR-ipv6-ping-act
traceroute	Cisco-IOS-XR-traceroute-act Cisco-IOS-XR-ipv4-traceroute-act Cisco-IOS-XR-ipv6-traceroute-act
crypto	Cisco-IOS-XR-crypto-act
clear ospf	Cisco-IOS-XR-ipv4-ospf-act Cisco-IOS-XR-ipv6-ospfv3-act
clear isis	Cisco-IOS-XR-isis-act
clear bgp	Cisco-IOS-XR-ipv4-bgp-act
copy	Cisco-IOS-XR-shellutil-copy-act.yang
delete	Cisco-IOS-XR-shellutil-delete-act.yang
System Process Mgmt : process (restart)	Cisco-IOS-XR-sysmgr-act Cisco-IOS-XR-sysadmin-pm
System Process Mgmt : Reload (System Admin virtual machine (VM) reload, line card (LC) reload)	Cisco-IOS-XR-sysadmin-sm
System Process Mgmt : Reload (IOS XR VM node reload from System Admin)	Cisco-IOS-XR-sysadmin-sdr-mgr
System Process Mgmt : Install	Cisco-IOS-XR-spirit-install-act
dumpcore	Cisco-IOS-XR-spirit-corehelper-cfg

Note The System admin models support only `<get>` and `<get-config>` operations. The `<edit-config>` operation works only with the `merge` operation. The other operations such as `<delete>`, `<remove>`, `<replace>` and so on are not supported.

Example: PING NETCONF Action

This use case shows the IOS XR NETCONF action request to run the ping command on the router.

```
<rpc message-id="101" xmlns="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:netconf:base:1.0">
 <ping xmlns="http://cisco.com/ns/yang/Cisco-IOS-XR-ping-act">
  <destination>
   <destination>1.2.3.4</destination>
  </destination>
 </ping>
</rpc>
```

This section shows the NETCONF action response from the router.

```
<rpc-reply message-id="101" xmlns="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:netconf:base:1.0">
 <ping-response xmlns="http://cisco.com/ns/yang/Cisco-IOS-XR-ping-act">
  <ipv4>
   <destination>1.2.3.4</destination>
   <repeat-count>5</repeat-count>
   <data-size>100</data-size>
   <timeout>2</timeout>
   <pattern>0xabcd</pattern>
   <rotate-pattern>0</rotate-pattern>
   <reply-list>
    <result>!</result>
    <result>!</result>
    <result>!</result>
    <result>!</result>
    <result>!</result>
   </reply-list>
   <hits>5</hits>
   <total>5</total>
   <success-rate>100</success-rate>
   <rtt-min>1</rtt-min>
   <rtt-avg>1</rtt-avg>
   <rtt-max>1</rtt-max>
  </ipv4>
 </ping-response>
</rpc-reply>
```

Example: XR Process Restart Action

This example shows the process restart action sent to NETCONF agent.

```
<rpc message-id="101" xmlns="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:netconf:base:1.0">
  <sysmgr-process-restart xmlns="http://cisco.com/ns/yang/Cisco-IOS-XR-sysmgr-act">
     <process-name>processmgr</process-name>
     <location>0/RP0/CPU0</location>
  </sysmgr-process-restart>
</rpc>
```

This example shows the action response received from the NETCONF agent.

```
<?xml version="1.0"?>
<rpc-reply message-id="101" xmlns="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:netconf:base:1.0">
   <ok/>
</rpc-reply>
```

Example: Shutdown Dumper Process

This use case shows the System Admin NETCONF action request to shut down dumper process on the router.

```
<rpc message-id="101" xmlns="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:netconf:base:1.0">
<action xmlns="http://tail-f.com/ns/netconf/actions/1.0">
   <data>
     <processes xmlns="http://www.cisco.com/ns/yang/Cisco-IOS-XR-sysadmin-pm">
       <all-locations>
         <location>0/RP0</location>
         <name>
           <proc-name>dumper</proc-name>
           <instance-id>0</instance-id>
           <proc-action>
             <do-what>shutdown</do-what>
             <user-name>root</user-name>
             <user-ip>1.2.3.4</user-ip>
           </proc-action>
         </name>
       </all-locations>
     </processes>
   </data>
</action>
</rpc>
```

This section shows the NETCONF action response from the router.

```
<?xml version="1.0"?>
<rpc-reply message-id="101" xmlns="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:netconf:base:1.0">
 <data>
  <processes xmlns="http://www.cisco.com/ns/yang/Cisco-IOS-XR-sysadmin-pm">
   <all-locations>
    <location>0/RP0</location>
    <name>
     <proc-name>dumper</proc-name>
     <instance-id>0</instance-id>
     <proc-action>
      <proc-action-status>User root (1.2.3.4) requested shutdown for process dumper(0) at
0/RP0
 'Sending signal 15 to stop process dumper(IID 0) pid=2439'</proc-action-status>
     </proc-action>
    </name>
   </all-locations>
  </processes>
 </data>
</rpc-reply>
```

Example: Copy Action

This example shows the RPC request and response for `copy` action:

RPC request:

```
<rpc xmlns="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:netconf:base:1.0" message-id="101">
  <copy xmlns="http://cisco.com/ns/yang/Cisco-IOS-XR-shellutil-copy-act">
```

```
    <sourcename>//root:<location>/100MB.txt</sourcename>
    <destinationname>/</destinationname>
    <sourcefilesystem>ftp:</sourcefilesystem>
    <destinationfilesystem>harddisk:</destinationfilesystem>
    <destinationlocation>0/RSP1/CPU0</destinationlocation>
  </copy>
</rpc>
```

RPC response:

```
<?xml version="1.0"?>
<rpc-reply message-id="101" xmlns="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:netconf:base:1.0">
 <response xmlns="http://cisco.com/ns/yang/Cisco-IOS-XR-shellutil-copy-act">Successfully
completed copy operation</response>
</rpc-reply>

8.261830565s elapsed
```

Example: Delete Action

This example shows the RPC request and response for `delete` action:

RPC request:

```
<rpc xmlns="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:netconf:base:1.0" message-id="101">
<delete xmlns="http://cisco.com/ns/yang/Cisco-IOS-XR-shellutil-delete-act">
    <name>harddisk:/netconf.txt</name>
  </delete>
</rpc>
```

RPC response:

```
<?xml version="1.0"?>
<rpc-reply message-id="101" xmlns="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:netconf:base:1.0">
 <response xmlns="http://cisco.com/ns/yang/Cisco-IOS-XR-shellutil-delete-act">Successfully
 completed delete operation</response>
</rpc-reply>

395.099948ms elapsed
```

Example: Install Action

This example shows the Install action request sent to NETCONF agent.

```
  <install-add xmlns="http://cisco.com/ns/yang/Cisco-IOS-XR-spirit-install-act">
      <packagepath>/nobackup/hanaik/yang_project/img-xrv9k</packagepath>
      <packagename>xrv9k-mpls-2.1.0.0-r64102I.x86_64.rpm</packagename>
  </install-add>
```

This example shows the Install action response received from NETCONF agent.

```
<?xml version="1.0"?>
<rpc-reply message-id="101" xmlns="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:netconf:base:1.0">
    <op-id xmlns="http://cisco.com/ns/yang/Cisco-IOS-XR-spirit-install-act">6</op-id>
</rpc-reply>
```

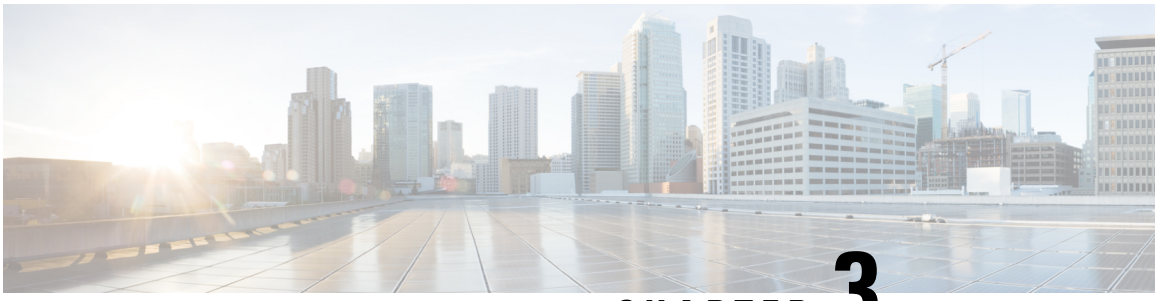
This example shows how to use *install add rpc* request with multiple packages enclosed within *packagename* tag.

```
<rpc xmlns="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:netconf:base:1.0" message-id="101">
```

```
<install-add xmlns="http://cisco.com/ns/yang/Cisco-IOS-XR-spirit-install-act">
   <packagepath>http://10.105.227.154/install_repo/fretta/651/651_02</packagepath>
        <packagename>ncs5500-k9sec-3.1.0.0-r65102I.x86_64.rpm</packagename>
        <packagename>ncs5500-li-1.0.0.0-r65102I.x86_64.rpm</packagename>
        <packagename>ncs5500-mcast-2.1.0.0-r65102I.x86_64.rpm</packagename>
        <packagename>ncs5500-mini-x.iso-6.5.1.02I</packagename>
        <packagename>ncs5500-mpls-2.1.0.0-r65102I.x86_64.rpm</packagename>
</install-add>
</rpc>
```

Restrictions for Install Action

- **Install upgrade** command is deprecated. Hence, use **install update** command instead of the **install upgrade** command.
- Only one request can be sent at a time.
- ISSU is not supported.
- Install Yang using NETCONF action can accept a maximum of 32 input parameters. Input parameters can be any inputs used in **install action** commands, such as package names to add, activate, deactivate, or remove, and operation IDs to retrieve any particular log related to that operation.



CHAPTER 3

Use NETCONF Protocol to Define Network Operations with Data Models

Table 2: Feature History Table

Feature Name	Release Information	Description
Unified NETCONF V1.0 and V1.1	Release 7.3.1	Cisco IOS XR supports NETCONF 1.0 and 1.1 programmable management interfaces. With this release, a client can choose to establish a NETCONF 1.0 or 1.1 session using a separate interface for both these formats. This enhancement provides a secure channel to operate the network with both interface specifications.

XR devices ship with the YANG files that define the data models they support. Using a management protocol such as NETCONF or gRPC, you can programmatically query a device for the list of models it supports and retrieve the model files.

Network Configuration Protocol (NETCONF) is a standard transport protocol that communicates with network devices. NETCONF provides mechanisms to edit configuration data and retrieve operational data from network devices. The configuration data represents the way interfaces, routing protocols and other network features are provisioned. The operational data represents the interface statistics, memory utilization, errors, and so on.

NETCONF uses an Extensible Markup Language (XML)-based data encoding for the configuration data, as well as protocol messages. It uses a simple RPC-based (Remote Procedure Call) mechanism to facilitate communication between a client and a server. The client can be a script or application that runs as part of a network manager. The server is a network device such as a router. NETCONF defines how to communicate with the devices, but does not handle what data is exchanged between the client and the server.

Note Accessing the router via NETCONF grants by default write permissions for a user, in spite of read-only access configured for this user for CLI access, as CLI authorization is bypassed.

NETCONF Session

A NETCONF session is the logical connection between a network configuration application (client) and a network device (router). The configuration attributes can be changed during any authorized session; the effects are visible in all sessions. NETCONF is connection-oriented, with SSH as the underlying transport. NETCONF sessions are established with a `hello` message, where features and capabilities are announced. At the end of each message, the NETCONF agent sends the `]]>]]>` marker. Sessions are terminated using `close` or `kill` messages.

Cisco IOS XR supports NETCONF 1.0 and 1.1 programmable management interfaces that are handled using two separate interfaces. From IOS XR, Release 7.3.1, a client can choose to establish a NETCONF 1.0 or 1.1 session using an interface for both these formats. A NETCONF proxy process waits for the `hello` message from its peer. If the proxy does not receive a `hello` message within the timeout period, it sends a NETCONF 1.1 `hello` message.

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<hello xmlns="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:netconf:base:1.0">
<capabilities>
<capability>urn:ietf:params:netconf:base:1.0</capability>
<capability>urn:ietf:params:netconf:base:1.1</capability>
<capability>urn:ietf:params:netconf:capability:writable-running:1.0</capability>
<capability>urn:ietf:params:netconf:capability:xpath:1.0</capability>
<capability>urn:ietf:params:netconf:capability:validate:1.0</capability>
<capability>urn:ietf:params:netconf:capability:validate:1.1</capability>
<capability>urn:ietf:params:netconf:capability:rollback-on-error:1.0</capability
--snip--
</capabilities>
<session-id>5</session-id>
</hello>]]>]]>
```

The following examples show the `hello` messages for the NETCONF versions:

```
netconf-xml agent listens on port 22

netconf-yang agent listens on port 830
```

Version 1.0 The NETCONF XML agent accepts the message.

```
<hello xmlns="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:netconf:base:1.0">
<capabilities>
<capability>urn:ietf:params:netconf:base:1.0</capability>
</capabilities>
</hello>
```

Version 1.1 The NETCONF YANG agent accepts the message.

```
<hello xmlns="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:netconf:base:1.0">
<capabilities>
<capability>urn:ietf:params:netconf:base:1.1</capability>
</capabilities>
</hello>
```

Using NETCONF 1.1, the RPC requests begin with `#<number>` and end with `##`. The number indicates how many bytes that follow the request.

Example:

```
#371
<rpc xmlns="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:netconf:base:1.0" message-id="101">
<get xmlns="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:netconf:base:1.0">
  <filter>
    <isis xmlns="http://cisco.com/ns/yang/Cisco-IOS-XR-clns-isis-oper">
      <instances>
        <instance>
```

```
          <neighbors/>
          <instance-name/>
        </instance>
      </instances>
    </isis>
  </filter>
</get>
</rpc>

##
```

Configure NETCONF Agent

To configure a NETCONF TTY agent, use the **netconf agent tty** command. In this example, you configure the *throttle* and *session timeout* parameters:

```
netconf agent tty
         throttle (memory | process-rate)
         session timeout
```

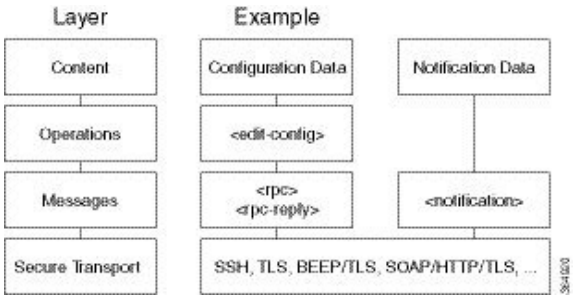
To enable the NETCONF SSH agent, use the following command:

```
ssh server v2
netconf-yang agent ssh
```

NETCONF Layers

NETCONF protocol can be partitioned into four layers:

Figure 2: NETCONF Layers



- **Content layer:** includes configuration and notification data
- **Operations layer:** defines a set of base protocol operations invoked as RPC methods with XML-encoded parameters
- **Messages layer:** provides a simple, transport-independent framing mechanism for encoding RPCs and notifications
- **Secure Transport layer:** provides a communication path between the client and the server

For more information about NETCONF, refer RFC 6241.

This article describes, with a use case to configure the local time on a router, how data models help in a faster programmatic configuration as compared to CLI.

- NETCONF Operations, on page 20
- Retrieve Default Parameters Using with-defaults Capability, on page 24
- Retrieve Transaction ID for NSO Operations, on page 30

• Set Router Clock Using Data Model in a NETCONF Session, on page 32

NETCONF Operations

NETCONF defines one or more configuration datastores and allows configuration operations on the datastores. A configuration datastore is a complete set of configuration data that is required to get a device from its initial default state into a desired operational state. The configuration datastore does not include state data or executive commands.

The base protocol includes the following NETCONF operations:

```
|  +--get-config
|  +--edit-Config
|     +--merge
|     +--replace
|     +--create
|     +--delete
|     +--remove
|     +--default-operations
|        +--merge
|        +--replace
|        +--none
|  +--get
|  +--lock
|  +--unLock
|  +--close-session
|  +--kill-session
```

These NETCONF operations are described in the following table:

NETCONF Operation	Description	Example
<get-config>	Retrieves all or part of a specified configuration from a named data store	Retrieve specific interface configuration details from running configuration using filter option <rpc message-id="101" xmlns="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:netconf:base:1.0"> <get-config> <source> <running/> </source> <filter> <interface-configurations xmlns="http://cisco.com/ns/yang/Cisco-IOS-XR-ifmgr-cfg"\> <interface-configuration> <active>act</active> <interface-name>TenGigE0/0/0/2/0</interface-name> </interface-configuration> </interface-configurations> </filter> </get-config> </rpc>

NETCONF Operation	Description	Example
<get>	Retrieves running configuration and device state information	Retrieve all acl configuration and device state information. Request: <get> <filter> <ipv4-acl-and-prefix-list xmlns="http://cisco.com/ns/yang/Cisco-IOS-XR-ipv4-acl-oper"/> </filter> </get>
<edit-config>	Loads all or part of a specified configuration to the specified target configuration	Configure ACL configs using **Merge** operation <rpc message-id="101" xmlns="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:netconf:base:1.0"> <edit-config> <target><candidate/></target> <config xmlns:xc="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:netconf:base:1.0"> <ipv4-acl-and-prefix-list xmlns="http://cisco.com/ns/yang/Cisco-IOS-XR-ipv4-acl-cfg" xc:operation=”merge”> <accesses> <access> <access-list-name>aclv4-1</access-list-name> <access-list-entries> <access-list-entry> <sequence-number>10</sequence-number> <remark>GUEST</remark> </access-list-entry> <access-list-entry> <sequence-number>20</sequence-number> <grant>permit</grant> <source-network> <source-address>172.0.0.0</source-address> <source-wild-card-bits>0.0.255.255</source-wild-card-bits> </source-network> </access-list-entry> </access-list-entries> </access> </accesses> </ipv4-acl-and-prefix-list> </config> </edit-config> </rpc> Commit: <rpc message-id="101" xmlns="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:netconf:base:1.0"> <commit/> </rpc>

NETCONF Operation	Description	Example

<lock>	Allows the client to lock the entire configuration datastore system of a device	Lock the running configuration.
		`Request:`
		`<rpc message-id="101"`
		`xmlns="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:netconf:base:1.0">`
		`<lock>`
		`<target>`
		`<running/>`
		`</target>`
		`</lock>`
		`</rpc>`
		
		`Response :`
		`<rpc-reply message-id="101"`
		`xmlns="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:netconf:base:1.0">`
		
		`<ok/>`
		`</rpc-reply>`

<Unlock>	Releases a previously locked configuration.
	An <unlock> operation will not succeed if either of the following conditions is true:
	• The specified lock is not currently active.
	• The session issuing the <unlock> operation is not the same session that obtained the lock.
		Lock and unlock the running configuration from the same session.
		`Request:`
		`rpc message-id="101"`
		`xmlns="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:netconf:base:1.0">`
		`<unlock>`
		`<target>`
		`<running/>`
		`</target>`
		`</unlock>`
		`</rpc>`
		
		`Response -`
		`<rpc-reply message-id="101"`
		`xmlns="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:netconf:base:1.0">`
		`<ok/>`
		`</rpc-reply>`

<close-session>	Closes the session. The server releases any locks and resources associated with the session and closes any associated connections.	Close a NETCONF session.
		`Request :`
		`<rpc message-id="101"`
		`xmlns="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:netconf:base:1.0">`
		`<close-session/>`
		`</rpc>`
		
		`Response:`
		`<rpc-reply message-id="101"`
		`xmlns="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:netconf:base:1.0">`
		`<ok/>`
		`</rpc-reply>`

NETCONF Operation	Description	Example

<kill-session>	Terminates operations currently in process, releases locks and resources associated with the session, and close any associated connections.	Terminate a session if the ID is other session ID.
		`Request:`
		`<rpc message-id="101"`
		`xmlns="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:netconf:base:1.0">`
		`<kill-session>`
		`<session-id>4</session-id>`
		`</kill-session>`
		`</rpc>`
		
		`Response:`
		`<rpc-reply message-id="101"`
		`xmlns="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:netconf:base:1.0">`
		`<ok/>`
		`</rpc-reply>`

Note The system admin models support `<get>` and `<get-config>` operations, and only `<edit-config>` operations with the `<merge>` operation. The other operations such as `<delete>`, `<remove>`, and `<replace>` are not supported for the system admin models.

NETCONF Operation to Get Configuration

This example shows how a NETCONF <get-config> request works for CDP feature.

The client initiates a message to get the current configuration of CDP running on the router. The router responds with the current CDP configuration.

Netconf Request (Client to Router)	Netconf Response (Router to Client)

`<rpc message-id="101"`
`xmlns="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:netconf:base:1.0">`
 	
`<get-config>`
`<source><running/></source>`
`<filter>`
`<cdp`
`xmlns="http://cisco.com/ns/yang/Cisco-IOS-XR-cdp-cfg"/>`
`</filter>`
`</get-config>`
`</rpc>`
	`<?xml version="1.0"?>`
	`<rpc-reply message-id="101"`
	`xmlns="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:netconf:base:1.0">`
	
	`<data>`
	`<cdp`
	`xmlns="http://cisco.com/ns/yang/Cisco-IOS-XR-cdp-cfg">`
	
	`<timer>10</timer>`
	`<enable>true</enable>`
	`<log-adjacency></log-adjacency>`
	`<hold-time>200</hold-time>`
	`<advertise-v1-only></advertise-v1-only>`
	`</cdp>`
	`#22`
	`</data>`
	`</rpc-reply>`

The <rpc> element in the request and response messages enclose a NETCONF request sent between the client and the router. The `message-id` attribute in the <rpc> element is mandatory. This attribute is a string chosen by the sender and encodes an integer. The receiver of the <rpc> element does not decode or interpret this string but simply saves it to be used in the <rpc-reply> message. The sender

must ensure that the `message-id` value is normalized. When the client receives information from the server, the <rpc-reply> message contains the same `message-id`.

Retrieve Default Parameters Using with-defaults Capability

NETCONF servers report default data nodes in response to RPC requests in the following ways:

- report-all: All data nodes are reported
- trim: Data nodes set to the YANG default aren't reported
- explicit: Data nodes set to the YANG default by the client are reported

Cisco IOS XR routers support only the explicit basic mode. A server that uses this mode must consider any data node that isn't explicitly set to be the default data.

As per RFC 6243, the router supports `<with-defaults>` capability to retrieve the default parameters of configuration and state data node using a NETCONF protocol operation. The `<with-defaults>` capability indicates which default-handling basic mode is supported by the server. It also indicates support for additional retrieval modes. These retrieval modes allow a NETCONF client to control whether the server returns the default data.

By default, `<with-defaults>` capability is disabled. To enable this capability, use the following command in Config mode:

```
netconf-yang agent
 ssh
 with-defaults-support enable
!
```

Once enabled, the capability is applied to all netconf-yang requests.

After enabling, the router must return the new capability as:

```
urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:yang:ietf-netconf-with-defaults:1.0?basic-mode=explicit
```

The `<get>`, `<get-config>`, `<copy-config>` and ,`<edit-config>` operations support `with-defaults` capability.

Example 1: Create Operation

A valid `create` operation attribute for a data node that is set by the server to its schema default value must succeed. It is set or used by the device whenever the NETCONF client does not provide a specific value for the relevant data node. In the following example, an `edit-config` request is sent to create a configuration:

<edit-config> request sent to the NETCONF agent:

```
<rpc xmlns="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:netconf:base:1.0"
message-id="urn:uuid:43efc290-c312-4df0-bb1b-a6e0bf8aac50">
<edit-config>
<target>
<candidate/>
</target>
<config xmlns:xc="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:netconf:base:1.0">
<interfaces xmlns="http://openconfig.net/yang/interfaces">
<interface>
<name>TenGigE0/0/0/0</name>
<subinterfaces>
<subinterface>
<index>2</index>
<config>
```

```
<enabled xc:operation="create">false</enabled>
<index xc:operation="create">2</index>
</config>
</subinterface>
</subinterfaces>
</interface>
</interfaces>
</config>
</edit-config>
</rpc>
```

Response received from the NETCONF agent:

```
<?xml version="1.0"?>
<rpc-reply message-id="101" xmlns="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:netconf:base:1.0">
 <ok/>
</rpc-reply>
```

Commit the configuration.

```
[host 172.x.x.x session-id 2985924161] Requesting 'Commit'
[host 172.x.x.x session-id 2985924161] Sending:
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?><nc:rpc
xmlns:nc="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:netconf:base:1.0"
message-id="urn:uuid:295eff87-1fb6-4f84-bb7d-c40b268eab1b"><nc:commit/></nc:rpc>

[host 172.x.x.x session-id 2985924161] Received:
<?xml version="1.0"?>
<rpc-reply message-id="urn:uuid:295eff87-1fb6-4f84-bb7d-c40b268eab1b"
xmlns:nc="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:netconf:base:1.0"
xmlns="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:netconf:base:1.0">
<ok/>
</rpc-reply>
CREATE operation completed
```

A `create` operation attribute for a data node that has been set by a client to its schema default value must fail with a `data-exists` error tag. The client can only create a default node that was not previously created by it. Else, the operation is rejected with the `data-exists` message.

```
<rpc xmlns="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:netconf:base:1.0"
message-id="urn:uuid:1f29267f-7593-4a3c-8382-6ab9bec323ca">
<edit-config>
 <target>
  <candidate/>
 </target>
 <config xmlns:xc="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:netconf:base:1.0">
  <interfaces xmlns="http://openconfig.net/yang/interfaces">
   <interface>
    <name>TenGigE0/0/0/0</name>
     <subinterfaces>
      <subinterface>
       <index>2</index>
        <config>
         <enabled xc:operation="create">false</enabled>
         <index xc:operation="create">2</index>
        </config>
      </subinterface>
     </subinterfaces>
    </interface>
   </interfaces>
 </config>
</edit-config>
</rpc>
```

```
[host 172.x.x.x session-id 2985924161] Received:
<?xml version="1.0"?>
<rpc-reply message-id="urn:uuid:1f29267f-7593-4a3c-8382-6ab9bec323ca"
xmlns="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:netconf:base:1.0">
 <rpc-error>
  <error-type>application</error-type>
   <error-tag>data-exists</error-tag>
   <error-severity>error</error-severity>
   <error-path
xmlns:ns1="http://openconfig.net/yang/interfaces">ns1:interfaces/ns1:interface[name =
'TenGigE0/0/0/0']/ns1:subinterfaces/ns1:subinterface[index = '2']/ns1:config</error-path>
 </rpc-error>
</rpc-reply>
```

Example 2: Delete Operation

A valid `delete` operation attribute for a data node set by a client to its schema default value must succeed. Whereas a valid `delete` operation attribute for a data node set by the server to its schema default value fails with a `data-missing` error tag.

<edit-config> request sent to the NETCONF agent:

```
<rpc xmlns="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:netconf:base:1.0"
message-id="urn:uuid:de95a248-29d7-4030-8351-cef8b8d47cdb">
<edit-config>
<target>
<candidate/>
</target>
<config xmlns:xc="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:netconf:base:1.0">
<interfaces xmlns="http://openconfig.net/yang/interfaces">
<interface>
<name>TenGigE0/0/0/0</name>
<subinterfaces>
<subinterface xc:operation="delete">
<index>2</index>
</subinterface>
</subinterfaces>
</interface>
</interfaces>
</config>
</edit-config>
</rpc>
```

Response received from the NETCONF agent:

```
<?xml version="1.0"?>
<rpc-reply message-id="urn:uuid:de95a248-29d7-4030-8351-cef8b8d47cdb"
xmlns="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:netconf:base:1.0">
<rpc-error>
<error-type>application</error-type>
<error-tag>data-missing</error-tag>
<error-severity>error</error-severity>
<error-path xmlns:ns1="http://openconfig.net/yang/interfaces">ns1:interfaces/ns1:
interface[name = 'TenGigE0/0/0/0']/ns1:subinterfaces/ns1:subinterface[index =
'2']/ns1:config</error-path></rpc-error>
</rpc-reply>
```

Example 3: Copy Configuration

In the following example, a `copy-config` request is sent to copy a configuration.

<copy-config> request sent to the NETCONF agent:

```
<rpc message-id="101" xmlns="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:netconf:base:1.0">
<copy-config>
 <target>
  <candidate/>
 </target>
 <source>
 <config>
  <interfaces xmlns="http://openconfig.net/yang/interfaces">
   <interface>
    <name>TenGigE0/0/0/0</name>
    <subinterfaces>
     <subinterface>
      <index>2</index>
      <config>
       <index>2</index>
      </config>
     </subinterface>
    </subinterfaces>
   </interface>

  </interfaces>
</config>
</source>
<with-defaults
xmlns="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:yang:ietf-netconf-with-defaults">explicit</with-defaults>
</copy-config>
</rpc>
<rpc xmlns="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:netconf:base:1.0" message-id="102">
  <commit/>
</rpc>
```

The show run command shows the copied configuration.

```
Router#show run
<data and time stamp>
Building configuration...
!! IOS XR Configuration 7.2.1
!! Last configuration change at <data and time stamp> by root
!
interface TenGigE0/0/0/0.2
!
end
```

Example 4: Get Configuration

The following example shows a `get-config` request with `explicit` mode to query the default parameters from the oc-interfaces.yang data model. The client gets the configuration values of what it sets.

<get-config> request sent to the NETCONF agent:

```
<rpc xmlns="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:netconf:base:1.0"
message-id="urn:uuid:63a49626-9f90-4ebe-89fd-741410cddf29">
 <get-config>
 <source>
 <running/>
 </source>
 <with-defaults
xmlns="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:yang:ietf-netconf-with-defaults">explicit</with-defaults>
 <filter type="subtree">
 <interfaces xmlns="http://openconfig.net/yang/interfaces"/>
 </filter>
```

```
 </get-config>
 </rpc>
```

<get-config> response received from the NETCONF agent:

```
<?xml version="1.0"?>
<rpc-reply message-id="urn:uuid:99d8b2d0-ab05-474a-bc02-9242ba511308"
xmlns="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:netconf:base:1.0">
 <data>
  <interfaces xmlns="http://openconfig.net/yang/interfaces">
   <interface>
     <name>TenGigE0/0/0/0</name>
       <subinterfaces>
       <subinterface>
         <index>2</index>
           <config>
            <index>2</index>
            <enabled>false</enabled>
           </config>
         <ipv6 xmlns="http://openconfig.net/yang/interfaces/ip">
         <config>
            <enabled>false</enabled>
           </config>
          </ipv6>
        </subinterface>
    </subinterfaces>
   </interface>
 <interface>
  <name>MgmtEth0/RSP0/CPU0/0</name>
   <config>
    <name>MgmtEth0/RSP0/CPU0/0</name>
     <type xmlns:idx="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:yang:iana-if-type">idx:ethernetCsmacd</type>

   </config>
    <ethernet xmlns="http://openconfig.net/yang/interfaces/ethernet">
     <config>
      <auto-negotiate>false</auto-negotiate>
     </config>
    </ethernet>
  <subinterfaces>
 <subinterface>
 <index>0</index>
<ipv4 xmlns="http://openconfig.net/yang/interfaces/ip">
<addresses>
 <address>
  <ip>172.xx.xx.xx</ip>
   <config>
    <ip>172.xx.xx.xx</ip>
    <prefix-length>24</prefix-length>
   </config>
 </address>
</addresses>
</ipv4>
</subinterface>
 </subinterfaces>
  </interface>
   <interface>
    <name>MgmtEth0/RSP1/CPU0/0</name>
    <config>
     <name>MgmtEth0/RSP1/CPU0/0</name>
     <type xmlns:idx="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:yang:iana-if-type">idx:ethernetCsmacd</type>
     <enabled>false</enabled>
  </config>
   <ethernet xmlns="http://openconfig.net/yang/interfaces/ethernet">
```

```
    <config>
      <auto-negotiate>false</auto-negotiate>
    </config>
  </ethernet>
 </interface>
 </interfaces>
 </data>
</rpc-reply>
READ operation completed
```

Example 5: Get Operation

The following example shows a `get` request with `explicit` mode to query the default parameters from the oc-interfaces.yang data model.

<get-config> request sent to the NETCONF agent:

```
<rpc xmlns="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:netconf:base:1.0"
message-id="urn:uuid:d8e52f0f-ceac-4193-89f6-d377ab8292d5">
<get>
<with-defaults
xmlns="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:yang:ietf-netconf-with-defaults">explicit</with-defaults>
<filter type="subtree">
<interfaces xmlns="http://openconfig.net/yang/interfaces">
<interface>
<name>TenGigE0/0/0/0</name>
<subinterfaces>
<subinterface>
<index>2</index>
<state/>
</subinterface>
</subinterfaces>
</interface>
</interfaces>
</filter>
</get>
</rpc>
```

<get> response received from the NETCONF agent:

```
<?xml version="1.0"?>
<rpc-reply message-id="urn:uuid:933df011-191f-4f31-9549-c4f7f6edd291"
xmlns="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:netconf:base:1.0">
  <data>
   <interfaces xmlns="http://openconfig.net/yang/interfaces">
    <interface>
    <name>TenGigE0/0/0/0</name>
     <subinterfaces>
      <subinterface>
      <index>2</index>
     <state>
      <index>2</index>
      <name>TenGigE0/0/0/0.2</name>
      <enabled>false</enabled>
      <admin-status>DOWN</admin-status>
      <oper-status>DOWN</oper-status>
      <last-change>0</last-change>
      <counters>
      <in-unicast-pkts>0</in-unicast-pkts>
      <in-pkts>0</in-pkts>
      <in-broadcast-pkts>0</in-broadcast-pkts>
      <in-multicast-pkts>0</in-multicast-pkts>
      <in-octets>0</in-octets>
```

```
      <out-unicast-pkts>0</out-unicast-pkts>
      <out-broadcast-pkts>0</out-broadcast-pkts>
      <out-multicast-pkts>0</out-multicast-pkts>
      <out-pkts>0</out-pkts>
      <out-octets>0</out-octets>
      <out-discards>0</out-discards>
      <in-discards>0</in-discards>
      <in-unknown-protos>0</in-unknown-protos>
      <in-errors>0</in-errors>
      <in-fcs-errors>0</in-fcs-errors>
      <out-errors>0</out-errors>
     <carrier-transitions>0</carrier-transitions>
    <last-clear>2020-03-02T15:35:30.927+00:00</last-clear>
   </counters>
  <ifindex>92</ifindex>
   <logical>true</logical>
  </state>
 </subinterface>
 </subinterfaces>
 </interface>
 </interfaces>
 </data>
</rpc-reply>
READ operation completed
```

Retrieve Transaction ID for NSO Operations

Table 3: Feature History Table

Feature Name	Release Information	Description
Unique Commit ID for Configuration State	Release 7.4.1	The network orchestrator is a central point of management for the network and typical workflow involves synchronizing the configuration states of the routers it manages. Loading configurations for comparing the states involves unnecessary data and subsequent comparisons are load intensive. This feature synchronizes the configuration states between the orchestrator and the router using a unique commit ID that the router maintains for each configuration commit. The orchestrator retrieves this commit ID from the router using NETCONF Remote Procedure Calls (RPCs) to identify whether the router has the latest configuration.

Cisco Network Services Orchestrator (NSO) is a data model-driven platform for automating your network orchestration. NSO uses NETCONF-based Network Element Drivers (NED) to synchronize the configuration

states of the routers it manages. NEDs comprise of the network-facing part of NSO and communicate over the native protocol supported by the router, such as Network Configuration Protocol (NETCONF).

IOS XR configuration manager maintains commit IDs (also known as the transaction IDs) for each commit operation. The manageability interfaces use these IDs. Currently, the operational data model provides a list of up to 100 last commits for NETCONF requests. The YANG client querying the last commit ID collects the entire list and finds the latest ID. Loading configurations for comparison to the orchestrator's configuration state can involve huge redundant data. The subsequent comparisons are also load intensive.

To overcome these limitations, the router maintains a unique last commit ID that is ideal for NSO operations. This ID indicates the latest configuration state on the router. The ID provides a one-step operation and increases the performance of configuration updates for the orchestrator.

An augmented configuration manageability model `Cisco-IOS-XR-config-cfgmgr-exec-augmented-oper` provides a single `last-commit-id` for the unique commit state. This model is available as part of the base package.

The following table lists the synchronization support between NSO and the IOS XR variants:

Entity	64-bit Routers (Releases Earlier than 7.4.1)	64-bit Routers (Releases 7.4.1 and Later)
cfgmgr	Yes	Yes
sysadmin	Yes	Yes
cfgmgr-aug	No	Yes
Leaf Data	NA	cfgmgr-aug
Check synchronization (NSO functionality from release 7.4.1 and later)	No	Yes

Where:

- commit-id represents `Cisco-IOS-XR-config-cfgmgr-exec-oper:config-manager/global/config-commit/commits/commit/commit-id`
- cfgmgr is the XR configuration manager
- sysadmin represents the `Cisco-IOS-XR-sysadmin-system` data model
- cfgmgr-aug represents the `Cisco-IOS-XR-config-cfgmgr-exec-augmented-oper` data model

The last commit ID is obtained from the configuration manager. The following example shows a sample NETCONF request and response to retrieve the commit ID:

```
Request:
<rpc message-id="test" xmlns="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:netconf:base:1.0">
<get>
  <filter type="subtree">
    <config-manager xmlns="http://cisco.com/ns/yang/Cisco-IOS-XR-config-cfgmgr-exec-oper">
      <global>
        <config-commit>
          <last-commit-id
xmlns="http://cisco.com/ns/yang/Cisco-IOS-XR-config-cfgmgr-exec-augmented-oper"/>
        </config-commit>
```

```
      </global>
    </config-manager>
 </filter>
</get>
</rpc>


Response:
<rpc-reply message-id="test" xmlns="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:netconf:base:1.0">
 <data>
  <config-manager xmlns="http://cisco.com/ns/yang/Cisco-IOS-XR-config-cfgmgr-exec-oper">
   <global>
    <config-commit>
     <last-commit-id
xmlns="http://cisco.com/ns/yang/Cisco-IOS-XR-config-cfgmgr-exec-augmented-oper">
        XR:1000000009;Admin:1595-891537-949905</last-commit-id>
    </config-commit>
   </global>
  </config-manager>
 </data>
</rpc-reply>
```

Set Router Clock Using Data Model in a NETCONF Session

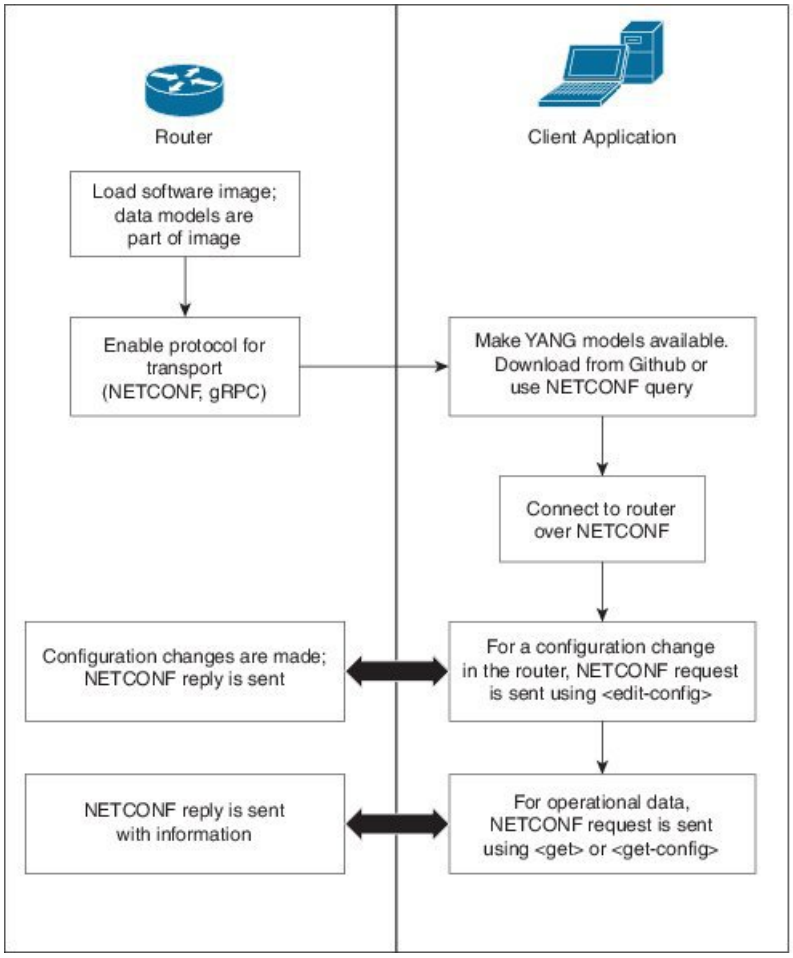
The process for using data models involves:

- Obtain the data models.
- Establish a connection between the router and the client using NETCONF communication protocol.
- Manage the configuration of the router from the client using data models.

Note Configure AAA authorization to restrict users from uncontrolled access. If AAA authorization is not configured, the command and data rules associated to the groups that are assigned to the user are bypassed. An IOS-XR user can have full read-write access to the IOS-XR configuration through Network Configuration Protocol (NETCONF), google-defined Remote Procedure Calls (gRPC) or any YANG-based agents. In order to avoid granting uncontrolled access, enable AAA authorization using **aaa authorization exec** command before setting up any configuration. For more information about configuring AAA authorization, see the *System Security Configuration Guide*.

The following image shows the tasks involved in using data models.

Figure 3: Process for Using Data Models

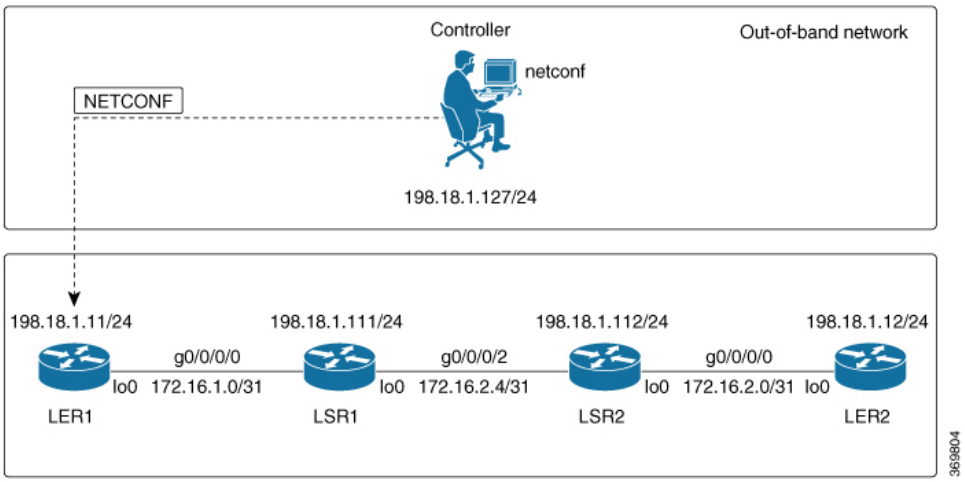


In this section, you use native data models to configure the router clock and verify the clock state using a NETCONF session.

Consider a network topology with four routers and one controller. The network consists of label edge routers (LER) and label switching routers (LSR). Two routers LER1 and LER2 are label edge routers, and two routers LSR1 and LSR2 are label switching routers. A host is the controller with a gRPC client. The controller communicates with all routers through an out-of-band network. All routers except LER1 are pre-configured with proper IP addressing and routing behavior. Interfaces between routers have a point-to-point configuration with `/31` addressing. Loopback prefixes use the format `172.16.255.x/32`.

The following image illustrates the network topology:

Figure 4: Network Topology for gRPC session



You use Cisco IOS XR native models `Cisco-IOS-XR-infra-clock-linux-cfg.yang` and `Cisco-IOX-XR-shellutil-oper` to programmatically configure the router clock. You can explore the structure of the data model using YANG validator tools such as pyang.

Before you begin

Retrieve the list of YANG modules on the router using NETCONF monitoring RPC. For more information

Procedure

Step 1 Explore the native configuration model for the system local time zone.

Example:

```
controller:netconf$ pyang --format tree Cisco-IOS-XR-infra-infra-clock-linux-cfg.yang
module: Cisco-IOS-XR-infra-infra-clock-linux-cfg
    +--rw clock
        +--rw time-zone!
        +--rw time-zone-name string
        +--rw area-name string
```

Step 2 Explore the native operational state model for the system time.

Example:

```
controller:netconf$ pyang --format tree Cisco-IOS-XR-shellutil-oper.yang
module: Cisco-IOS-XR-shellutil-oper
    +--ro system-time
        +--ro clock
        | +--ro year? uint16
        | +--ro month? uint8
        | +--ro day? uint8
        | +--ro hour? uint8
        | +--ro minute? uint8
        | +--ro second? uint8
        | +--ro millisecond? uint16
        | +--ro wday? uint16
```

```
        | +--ro time-zone? string
        | +--ro time-source? Time-source
        +--ro uptime
            +--ro host-name? string
            +--ro uptime? uint32
```

Step 3 Retrieve the current time on router LER1.

Example:

```
controller:netconf$ more xr-system-time-oper.xml <system-time
xmlns="http://cisco.com/ns/yang/Cisco-IOS-XR-shellutil-oper"/>
controller:netconf$ netconf get --filter xr-system-time-oper.xml
198.18.1.11:830
<?xml version="1.0" ?>
<system-time xmlns="http://cisco.com/ns/yang/Cisco-IOS-XR-shellutil-oper">
    <clock>
        <year>2019</year>
        <month>8</month>
        <day>22</day>
        <hour>17</hour>
        <minute>30</minute>
        <second>37</second>
        <millisecond>690</millisecond>
        <wday>1</wday>
        <time-zone>UTC</time-zone>
        <time-source>calendar</time-source>
    </clock>
    <uptime>
        <host-name>ler1</host-name>
        <uptime>851237</uptime>
    </uptime>
</system-time>
```

Notice that the timezone `UTC` indicates that a local timezone is not set.

Step 4 Configure Pacific Standard Time (PST) as local time zone on LER1.

Example:

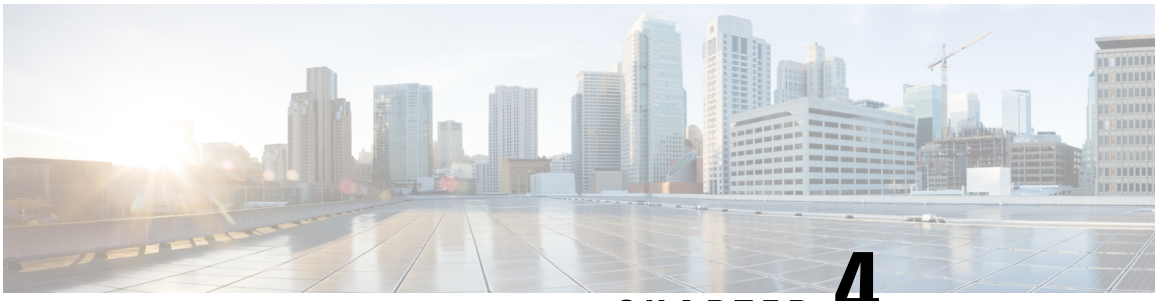
```
controller:netconf$ more xr-system-time-oper.xml <system-time
xmlns="http://cisco.com/ns/yang/Cisco-IOS-XR-shellutil-oper"/>
controller:netconf$ get --filter xr-system-time-oper.xml
<username>:<password>@198.18.1.11:830
<?xml version="1.0" ?>
  <system-time xmlns="http://cisco.com/ns/yang/Cisco-IOS-XR-shellutil-oper">
    <clock>
        <year>2019</year>
        <month>8</month>
        <day>22</day>
        <hour>9</hour>
        <minute>52</minute>
        <second>10</second>
        <millisecond>134</millisecond>
        <wday>1</wday>
        <time-zone>PST</time-zone>
        <time-source>calendar</time-source>
    </clock>
    <uptime>
        <host-name>ler1</host-name>
        <uptime>852530</uptime>
    </uptime>
</system-time>
```

Step 5 Verify that the router clock is set to PST time zone.

Example:

```
controller:netconf$ more xr-system-time-oper.xml
<system-time xmlns="http://cisco.com/ns/yang/Cisco-IOS-XR-shellutil-oper"/>

controller:netconf$ netconf get --filter xr-system-time-oper.xml
<username>:<password>@198.18.1.11:830
<?xml version="1.0" ?>
<system-time xmlns="http://cisco.com/ns/yang/Cisco-IOS-XR-shellutil-oper">
    <clock>
        <year>2018</year>
        <month>12</month>
        <day>22</day>
        <hour>9</hour>
        <minute>52</minute>
        <second>10</second>
        <millisecond>134</millisecond>
        <wday>1</wday>
        <time-zone>PST</time-zone>
        <time-source>calendar</time-source>
    </clock>
    <uptime>
        <host-name>ler1</host-name>
        <uptime>852530</uptime>
    </uptime>
</system-time>
```

In summary, router LER1, which had no local timezone configuration, is programmatically configured using data models.



CHAPTER 4

Use gRPC Protocol to Define Network Operations with Data Models

XR devices ship with the YANG files that define the data models they support. Using a management protocol such as NETCONF or gRPC, you can programmatically query a device for the list of models it supports and retrieve the model files.

gRPC is an open-source RPC framework. It is based on Protocol Buffers (Protobuf), which is an open source binary serialization protocol. gRPC provides a flexible, efficient, automated mechanism for serializing structured data, like XML, but is smaller and simpler to use. You define the structure using protocol buffer message types in `.proto` files. Each protocol buffer message is a small logical record of information, containing a series of name-value pairs.

gRPC encodes requests and responses in binary. gRPC is extensible to other content types along with Protobuf. The Protobuf binary data object in gRPC is transported over HTTP/2.

gRPC supports distributed applications and services between a client and server. gRPC provides the infrastructure to build a device management service to exchange configuration and operational data between a client and a server. The structure of the data is defined by YANG models.

Note All 64-bit IOS XR platforms support gRPC and TCP protocols. All 32-bit IOS XR platforms support only TCP protocol.

Cisco gRPC IDL uses the protocol buffers interface definition language (IDL) to define service methods, and define parameters and return types as protocol buffer message types. The gRPC requests are encoded and sent to the router using JSON. Clients can invoke the RPC calls defined in the IDL to program the router.

The following example shows the syntax of the proto file for a gRPC configuration:

```
syntax = "proto3";

package IOSXRExtensibleManagabilityService;

service gRPCConfigOper {

    rpc GetConfig(ConfigGetArgs) returns(stream ConfigGetReply) {};

    rpc MergeConfig(ConfigArgs) returns(ConfigReply) {};

    rpc DeleteConfig(ConfigArgs) returns(ConfigReply) {};
```

```
    rpc ReplaceConfig(ConfigArgs) returns(ConfigReply) {};

    rpc CliConfig(CliConfigArgs) returns(CliConfigReply) {};

    rpc GetOper(GetOperArgs) returns(stream GetOperReply) {};

    rpc CommitReplace(CommitReplaceArgs) returns(CommitReplaceReply) {};
}
message ConfigGetArgs {
     int64 ReqId = 1;
     string yangpathjson = 2;
}

message ConfigGetReply {
    int64 ResReqId = 1;
    string yangjson = 2;
    string errors = 3;
}

message GetOperArgs {
     int64 ReqId = 1;
     string yangpathjson = 2;
}

message GetOperReply {
    int64 ResReqId = 1;
    string yangjson = 2;
    string errors = 3;
}

message ConfigArgs {
    int64 ReqId = 1;
    string yangjson = 2;

}

message ConfigReply {
    int64 ResReqId = 1;
    string errors = 2;
}

message CliConfigArgs {
    int64 ReqId = 1;
    string cli = 2;
}

message CliConfigReply {
    int64 ResReqId = 1;
    string errors = 2;
}

message CommitReplaceArgs {
     int64 ReqId = 1;
     string cli = 2;
     string yangjson = 3;
}

message CommitReplaceReply {
     int64 ResReqId = 1;
     string errors = 2;
}
```

Example for gRPCExec configuration:

```
service gRPCExec {
    rpc ShowCmdTextOutput(ShowCmdArgs) returns(stream ShowCmdTextReply) {};
    rpc ShowCmdJSONOutput(ShowCmdArgs) returns(stream ShowCmdJSONReply) {};
    rpc ActionJSON(ActionJSONArgs) returns(stream ActionJSONReply) {};
}

message ShowCmdArgs {
     int64 ReqId = 1;
     string cli = 2;
}

message ShowCmdTextReply {
    int64 ResReqId =1;
    string output = 2;
    string errors = 3;
}

message ActionJSONArgs {
 int64 ReqId = 1;
 string yangpathjson = 2;
}

message ActionJSONReply {
 int64 ResReqId = 1;
 string yangjson = 2;
 string errors = 3;
}
```

Example for OpenConfiggRPC configuration:

```
service OpenConfiggRPC {
     rpc SubscribeTelemetry(SubscribeRequest) returns (stream SubscribeResponse) {};
     rpc UnSubscribeTelemetry(CancelSubscribeReq) returns (SubscribeResponse) {};
     rpc GetModels(GetModelsInput) returns (GetModelsOutput) {};
}

message GetModelsInput {
     uint64  requestId   = 1;
     string  name        = 2;
    string  namespace   = 3;
    string  version     = 4;
    enum MODLE_REQUEST_TYPE {
         SUMMARY = 0;
         DETAIL  = 1;
     }
     MODLE_REQUEST_TYPE requestType = 5;
}

message GetModelsOutput {
     uint64  requestId   = 1;
     message ModelInfo {
         string  name        = 1;
         string  namespace   = 2;
        string  version     = 3;
         GET_MODEL_TYPE  modelType = 4;
         string modelData = 5;
     }
     repeated ModelInfo models = 2;
     OC_RPC_RESPONSE_TYPE responseCode = 3;
     string msg = 4;
}
```

This article describes, with a use case to configure interfaces on a router, how data models helps in a faster programmatic and standards-based configuration of a network, as comapared to CLI.

- gRPC Operations, on page 40
- gRPC over UNIX Domain Sockets, on page 43
- gRPC Network Management Interface, on page 45
- gRPC Network Operations Interface , on page 50
- Configure Interfaces Using Data Models in a gRPC Session, on page 55

gRPC Operations

The following are the defined manageability service gRPC operations for Cisco IOS XR:

gRPC Operation	Description
GetConfig	Retrieves the configuration from the router.
GetModels	Gets the supported Yang models on the router
MergeConfig	Merges the input config with the existing device configuration.
DeleteConfig	Deletes one or more subtrees or leaves of configuration.
ReplaceConfig	Replaces part of the existing configuration with the input configuration.
CommitReplace	Replaces all existing configuration with the new configuration provided.
GetOper	Retrieves operational data.
CliConfig	Invokes the input CLI configuration.
ShowCmdTextOutput	Returns the output of a show command in the text form
ShowCmdJSONOutput	Returns the output of a show command in JSON form.

gRPC Operation to Get Configuration

This example shows how a gRPC GetConfig request works for CDP feature.

The client initiates a message to get the current configuration of CDP running on the router. The router responds with the current CDP configuration.

gRPC Request (Client to Router)	gRPC Response (Router to Client)

rpc GetConfig
{
"Cisco-IOS-XR-cdp-cfg:cdp": [
"cdp": "running-configuration"
]
}
 	
rpc GetConfig
{
"Cisco-IOS-XR-ethernet-lldp-cfg:lldp": [
"lldp": "running-configuration"
]
}
	{
	"Cisco-IOS-XR-cdp-cfg:cdp": {
	"timer": 50,
	"enable": true,
	"log-adjacency": [
	null
	],
	"hold-time": 180,
	"advertise-v1-only": [
	null
	]
	}
	}
	
	{
	"Cisco-IOS-XR-ethernet-lldp-cfg:lldp": {
	"timer": 60,
	"enable": true,
	"reinit": 3,
	"holdtime": 150
	}
	}

gRPC Authentication Modes

gRPC supports the following authentication modes to secure communication between clients and servers. These authentication modes help ensure that only authorized entities can access the gRPC services, like gNOI, gRIBI, and P4RT. Upon receiving a gRPC request, the device will authenticate the user and perform various authorization checks to validate the user.

The following table lists the authentication type and configuration requirements:

Table 4: gRPC Authentication Modes and Configuration Requirements

Type	Authentication Method	Authorization Method	Configuration Requirement	Requirement From Client
Metadata with TLS	username, password	username	**grpc**	username, password, and CA
Metadata without TLS	username, password	username	**grpc no-tls**	username, password
Metadata with Mutual TLS	username, password	username	**grpc tls-mutual**	username, password, client certificate, client key, and CA
Certificate based Authentication	client certificate's common name field	username from client certificate's common name field	**grpc tls-mutual** and **grpc certificate authentication**	client certificate, client key, and CA

Certificate based Authentication

In Extensible Manageability Services (EMS) gRPC, the certificates play a vital role in ensuring secure and authenticated communication. The EMS gRPC utilizes the following certificates for authentication:

```
/misc/config/grpc/ems.pem
/misc/config/grpc/ems.key
/misc/config/grpc/ca.cert
```

Note For clients to use the certificates, ensure to copy the certificates from **/misc/config/grpc/**

Generation of Certificates

These certificates are typically generated using a Certificate Authority (CA) by the device. The EMS certificates, including the server certificate (**ems.pem**), public key (**ems.key**), and CA certificate (**ca.cert**), are generated with specific parameters like the common name **ems.cisco.com** to uniquely identify the EMS server and placed in the **/misc/config/grpc/** location.

The default certificates that are generated by the server are Server-only TLS certificates and by using these certificates you can authenticate the identity of the server.

Usage of Certificates

These certificates are used for enabling secure communication through Transport Layer Security (TLS) between gRPC clients and the EMS server. The client should use **ems.pem** and **ca.cert** to initiate the TLS authentication.

To update the certificates, ensure to copy the new certificates that has been generated earlier to the location and restart the server.

Custom Certificates

If you want to use your own certificates for EMS gRPC communication, then you can follow a workflow to generate a custom certificates with the required parameters and then configure the EMS server to use these custom certificates. This process involves replacing the default EMS certificates with the custom ones and ensuring that the gRPC clients also trust the custom CA certificate. For more information on how to customize the **common-name**, see *Certificate Common-Name For Dial-in Using gRPC Protocol*.

Authenticate gRPC Services

Note Typically, gRPC clients include the username and password in the gRPC metadata fields.

Procedure

Use any one of the following configuration type to authenticate any gRPC service.

- **Metadata with TLS**

```
Router#config
Router(config)#grpc
Router(config-grpc)#commit
```

- **Metadata without TLS**

```
Router#config
Router(config)#grpc
Router(config-grpc)#no-tls
Router(config-grpc)#commit
```

- **Metadata with Mutual TLS**

```
Router#config
Router(config)#grpc
Router(config-grpc)#tls-mutual
Router(config-grpc)#commit
```

- **Certificate based Authentication**

```
Router(config)#grpc
Router(config-grpc)#tls-mutual
Router(config-grpc)#certificate-authentication
Router(config-grpc)#commit
```

gRPC over UNIX Domain Sockets

Table 5: Feature History Table

Feature Name	Release Information	Description
gRPC Connections over UNIX domain sockets for Enhanced Security and Control	Release 7.5.1	This feature allows local containers and scripts on the router to establish gRPC connections over UNIX domain sockets. These sockets provide better inter-process communication eliminating the need to manage passwords for local communications. Configuring communication over UNIX domain sockets also gives you better control of permissions and security because UNIX file permissions come into force. This feature introduces the **grpc local-connection** command.

You can use local containers to establish gRPC connections via a TCP protocol where authentication using username and password is mandatory. This functionality is extended to establish gRPC connections over UNIX domain sockets, eliminating the need to manage password rotations for local communications.

When gRPC is configured on the router, the gRPC server starts and then registers services such as gRPC Network Management Interface and gRPC Network Operations Interface . After all the gRPC server registrations are complete, the listening socket is opened to listen to incoming gRPC connection requests. Currently, a TCP listen socket is created with the IP address, VRF, or gRPC listening port. With this feature, the gRPC server listens over UNIX domain sockets that must be accessible from within the container via a local connection by default. With the UNIX socket enabled, the server listens on both TCP and UNIX sockets. However, if disable the UNIX socket, the server listens only on the TCP socket. The socket file is located at /misc/app_host/ems/grpc.sock directory.

The following process shows the configuration changes required to enable or disable gRPC over UNIX domain sockets.

Procedure

Step 1 Configure the gRPC server.

Example:

```
Router(config)#grpc
Router(config-grpc)#local-connection
Router(config-grpc)#commit
```

To disable the UNIX socket use the following command.

```
Router(config-grpc)#no local-connection
```

The gRPC server restarts after you enable or disable the UNIX socket. If you disable the socket, any active gRPC sessions are dropped and the gRPC data store is reset.

The scale of gRPC requests remains the same and is split between the TCP and Unix socket connections. The maximum session limit is 256, if you utilize the 256 sessions on Unix sockets, further connections on either TCP or UNIX sockets is rejected.

Step 2 Verify that the local-connection is successfully enabled.

Example:

```
Router#show grpc status
Thu Nov 25 16:51:30.382 UTC
*************************show gRPC status**********************
----------------------------------------------------------------
transport                       :     grpc
access-family                   :     tcp4
TLS                             :     enabled
trustpoint                      :
listening-port                  :     57400
local-connection                :     enabled
max-request-per-user            :     10
max-request-total               :     128
max-streams                     :     32
max-streams-per-user            :     32
vrf-socket-ns-path              :     global-vrf
min-client-keepalive-interval   :     300
________________________________________________________________
```

A gRPC client must dial into the socket to send connection requests.

The following is an example of a Go client connecting to UNIX socket:

```
const sockAddr = "/misc/app_host/ems/grpc.sock"

...
func UnixConnect(addr string, t time.Duration) (net.Conn, error) {
    unix_addr, err := net.ResolveUnixAddr("unix", sockAddr)
    conn, err := net.DialUnix("unix", nil, unix_addr)
    return conn, err
}


func main() {
...
```

```
    opts = append(opts, grpc.WithTimeout(time.Second*time.Duration(*operTimeout)))
    opts = append(opts, grpc.WithDefaultCallOptions(grpc.MaxCallRecvMsgSize(math.MaxInt32)))
    ...
    opts = append(opts, grpc.WithDialer(UnixConnect))
    conn, err := grpc.Dial(sockAddr, opts...)
    ...
}
```

gRPC Network Management Interface

gRPC Network Management Interface (gNMI) is a gRPC-based network management protocol used to modify, install or delete configuration from network devices. It is also used to view operational data, control and generate telemetry streams from a target device to a data collection system. It uses a single protocol to manage configurations and stream telemetry data from network devices.

The subscription in a gNMI does not require prior sensor path configuration on the target device. Sensor paths are requested by the collector (such as pipeline), and the subscription mode can be specified for each path. gNMI uses gRPC as the transport protocol and the configuration is same as that of gRPC.

gNMI Wildcard in Schema Path

Table 6: Feature History Table

Feature Name	Release Information	Description
Use gNMI Get Request With Wildcard Key to Retrieve Data	Release 7.5.2	You use a gRPC Network Management Interface (gNMI) `Get` request with wildcard key to retrieve the configuration and operational data of all the elements in the data model schema paths. In earlier releases, you had to specify the correct key to retrieve data. The router returned a JSON error message if the key wasn't specified in a list node. For more information about using wildcard search in gNMI requests, see the Github repository.

gNMI protocol supports wildcards to indicate all elements at a given subtree in the schema. These wildcards are used for telemetry subscriptions or gNMI `Get` requests. The encoding of the path in gNMI uses a structured format. This format consists of a set of elements such as the path name and keys. The keys are represented as string values, regardless of their type within the schema that describes the data. gNMI supports the following options to retrieve data using wildcard search:

- **Single-level wildcard:** The name of a path element is specified as an asterisk (*). The following sample shows a wildcard as the key name. This operation returns the description for all interfaces on a device.

```
path {
  elem {
    name: "interfaces"
  }
  elem {
    name: "interface"
    key {
     key: "name"
      value: "*"
    }
  }
  elem {
    name: "config"
  }
  elem {
    name: "description"
  }
}
```

- **Multi-level wildcard:** The name of the path element is specified as an ellipsis (…). The following example shows a wildcard search that returns all fields with a description available under `/interfaces` path.

```
path {
  elem {
    name: "interfaces"
  }
  elem {
    name: "..."
  }
  elem {
    name: "description"
  }
}
```

Example: gNMI Get Request with Unique Path to a Leaf

The following is a sample `Get` request to fetch the operational state of `GigabitEthernet0/0/0/0` interface in particular.

```
path: <
    origin: "Cisco-IOS-XR-pfi-im-cmd-oper"
        elem: <
            name: "interfaces"
        >
        elem: <
            name: "interface-xr"
        >
        elem: <
            name: "interface"
            key: <
                key: "interface-name"
                value: "\"GigabitEthernet0/0/0/0\""
            >
        >
        elem: <
            name: "state"
        >
>
type: OPERATIONAL
encoding: JSON_IETF
```

The following is a sample `Get` response:

```
notification: <
  timestamp: 1597974202517298341
  update: <
    path: <
      origin: "Cisco-IOS-XR-pfi-im-cmd-oper"
       elem: <
          name: "interfaces"
       >
       elem: <
          name: "interface-xr"
       >
       elem: <
          name: "interface"
          key: <
            key: "interface-name"
            value: "\"GigabitEthernet0/0/0/0\""
           >
        >
        elem: <
            name: "state"
           >
       >
       val: <
          json_ietf_val: im-state-admin-down
       >
    >
>
error: <
>
```

Example: gNMI Get Request Without a Key Specified in the Schema Path

The following is a sample `Get` request to fetch the operational state of all interfaces.

```
path: <
    origin: "Cisco-IOS-XR-pfi-im-cmd-oper"
        elem: <
            name: "interfaces"
        >
        elem: <
            name: "interface-xr"
        >
        elem: <
            name: "interface"
        >
        elem: <
            name: "state"
        >
>
type: OPERATIONAL
encoding: JSON_IETF
```

The following is a sample `Get` response:

```
path: <
    origin: "Cisco-IOS-XR-pfi-im-cmd-oper"
        elem: <
            name: "interfaces"
        >
        elem: <
            name: "interface-xr"
        >
        elem: <
            name: "interface"
```

```
        >
        elem: <
            name: "state"
        >
>
type: OPERATIONAL
encoding: JSON_IETF
  notification: <
  timestamp: 1597974202517298341
  update: <
    path: <
      origin: "Cisco-IOS-XR-pfi-im-cmd-oper"
      elem: <
        name: "interfaces"
      >
      elem: <
        name: "interface-xr"
      >
      elem: <
        name: "interface"
        key: <
          key: "interface-name"
          value: "\"GigabitEthernet0/0/0/0\""
        >
      >
      elem: <
        name: "state"
      >
    >
    val: <
      json_ietf_val: im-state-admin-down
    >
  >
  update: <
    path: <
      origin: "Cisco-IOS-XR-pfi-im-cmd-oper"
      elem: <
        name: "interfaces"
      >
      elem: <
        name: "interface-xr"
      >
      elem: <
        name: "interface"
        key: <
          key: "interface-name"
          value: "\"GigabitEthernet0/0/0/1\""
        >
      >
      elem: <
        name: "state"
      >
    >
    val: <
      json_ietf_val: im-state-admin-down
    >
  >
  update: <
    path: <
      origin: "Cisco-IOS-XR-pfi-im-cmd-oper"
      elem: <
        name: "interfaces"
      >
      elem: <
```

```
        name: "interface-xr"
      >
      elem: <
        name: "interface"
        key: <
          key: "interface-name"
          value: "\"GigabitEthernet0/0/0/2\""
        >
      >
      elem: <
        name: "state"
      >
    >
    val: <
      json_ietf_val: im-state-admin-down
    >
  >
  update: <
    path: <
      origin: "Cisco-IOS-XR-pfi-im-cmd-oper"
      elem: <
        name: "interfaces"
      >
      elem: <
        name: "interface-xr"
      >
      elem: <
        name: "interface"
        key: <
          key: "interface-name"
          value: "\"MgmtEth0/RP0/CPU0/0\""
        >
      >
      elem: <
        name: "state"
      >
    >
    val: <
      json_ietf_val: im-state-admin-down
    >
  >
```

Example: gNMI Get Request with Unique Path to a CLI

The following is a sample `Get` request to fetch the system updates through CLI.

```
path: <
  origin: "cli"
  elem: <
    name: "show version"
  >
>
type: ALL
encoding: ASCII
```

The following is a sample `Get` response.

```
path: <
  origin: "cli"
  elem: <
    name: "show version"
  >
>

type: ALL
```

```
...
...

[
  {
    "source": "unix:///var/run/test_env.sock",
    "timestamp": 1730123328800447525,
    "time": "2024-10-28T06:48:48.800447525-07:00",
    "updates": [
      {
        "Path": "show version",
        "values": {
          "show version":
"------------------------------- show version --------------------------------
Cisco IOS XR Software, Version 24.4.1.37I
Copyright (c) 2013-2024 by Cisco Systems, Inc.
Build Information:\n Built By     : swtools
Built On      : Mon Oct 21 03:16:32 PDT 2024
Built Host    : iox-lnx-121\n Workspace     :
/auto/iox-lnx-121-san2/prod/24.4.1.37I.SIT_IMAGE/ncs5500/ws
Version       : 24.4.1.37I\n Location      : /opt/cisco/XR/packages/
Label         : 24.4.1.37I-EFT2LabOnly
cisco NCS-5500 () processor
System uptime is 3 days 22 hours 54 minutes\n\n\n"
        }
      }
    ]
  }
]
```

gRPC Network Operations Interface

gRPC Network Operations Interface (gNOI) defines a set of gRPC-based microservices for executing operational commands on network devices. These services are to be used in conjunction with gRPC network management interface (gNMI) for all target state and operational state of a network. gNOI uses gRPC as the transport protocol and the configuration is same as that of gRPC. For more information about gNOI, see the Github repository.

gNOI RPCs

To send gNOI RPC requests, you need a client that implements the gNOI client interface for each RPC.

All messages within the gRPC service definition are defined as protocol buffer (.proto) files. gNOI OpenConfig proto files are located in the Github repository.

Table 7: Feature History Table

Feature Name	Release Information	Description
gNOI System Proto	Release 7.8.1	You can now avail the services of `CancelReboot` to terminate outstanding reboot request, and `KillProcess` RPCs to restart the process on device.

gNOI supports the following remote procedure calls (RPCs):

System RPCs

The RPCs are used to perform key operations at the system level such as upgrading the software, rebooting the device, and troubleshooting the network. The **system.proto** file is available in the Github repository.

RPC	Description
Reboot	Reboots the target. The router supports the following reboot options: • COLD = 1; Shutdown and restart OS and all hardware • POWERDOWN = 2; Halt and power down • HALT = 3; Halt • POWERUP = 7; Apply power
RebootStatus	Returns the status of the target reboot.
SetPackage	Places a software package including bootable images on the target device.
Ping	Pings the target device and streams the results of the ping operation.
Traceroute	Runs the traceroute command on the target device and streams the result. The default hop count is 30.
Time	Returns the current time on the target device.
SwitchControlProcessor	Switches from the current route processor to the specified route processor. If the target does not exist, the RPC returns an error message.

File RPCs

The RPCs are used to perform key operations at the file level such as reading the contents if a file and its metadata. The **file.proto** file is available in the Github repository.

RPC	Description
Get	Reads and streams the contents of a file from the target device. The RPC streams the file as sequential messages with 64 KB of data.
Remove	Removes the specified file from the target device. The RPC returns an error if the file does not exist or permission is denied to remove the file.
Stat	Returns metadata about a file on the target device.
Put	Streams data into a file on the target device.

RPC	Description
TransferToRemote	Transfers the contents of a file from the target device to a specified remote location. The response contains the hash of the transferred data. The RPC returns an error if the file does not exist, the file transfer fails or an error when reading the file. This is a blocking call until the file transfer is complete.

Certificate Management (Cert) RPCs

The RPCs are used to perform operations on the certificate in the target device. The **cert.proto** file is available in the Github repository.

RPC	Description
Rotate	Replaces an existing certificate on the target device by creating a new CSR request and placing the new certificate on the target device. If the process fails, the target rolls back to the original certificate.
Install	Installs a new certificate on the target by creating a new CSR request and placing the new certificate on the target based on the CSR.
GetCertificates	Gets the certificates on the target.
RevokeCertificates	Revokes specific certificates.
CanGenerateCSR	Asks a target if the certificate can be generated.

Interface RPCs

The RPCs are used to perform operations on the interfaces. The **interface.proto** file is available in the Github repository.

RPC	Description
SetLoopbackMode	Sets the loopback mode on an interface.
GetLoopbackMode	Gets the loopback mode on an interface.
ClearInterfaceCounters	Resets the counters for the specified interface.

Layer2 RPCs

The RPCs are used to perform operations on the Link Layer Discovery Protocol (LLDP) layer 2 neighbor discovery protocol. The **layer2.proto** file is available in the Github repository.

Feature Name	Description
ClearLLDPInterface	Clears all the LLDP adjacencies on the specified interface.

BGP RPCs

The RPCs are used to perform operations on the Link Layer Discovery Protocol (LLDP) layer 2 neighbor discovery protocol. The **bgp.proto** file is available in the Github repository.

Feature Name	Description
ClearBGPNeighbor	Clears a BGP session.

Diagnostic (Diag) RPCs

The RPCs are used to perform diagnostic operations on the target device. You assign each bit error rate test (BERT) operation a unique ID and use this ID to manage the BERT operations. The **diag.proto** file is available in the Github repository.

Feature Name	Description
StartBERT	Starts BERT on a pair of connected ports between devices in the network.
StopBERT	Stops an already in-progress BERT on a set of ports.
GetBERTResult	Gets the BERT results during the BERT or after the operation is complete.

gNOI RPCs

The following examples show the representation of few gNOI RPCs:

Get RPC

Streams the contents of a file from the target.

```
RPC to 10.105.57.106:57900
RPC start time: 20:58:27.513638
---------------------File Get Request---------------------
RPC start time: 20:58:27.513668
remote_file: "harddisk:/giso_image_repo/test.log"

----------------------File Get Response----------------------
RPC end time: 20:58:27.518413
contents: "GNOI \n\n"

hash {
method: MD5
hash: "D\002\375h\237\322\024\341\370\3619k\310\333\016\343"
}
```

Remove RPC

Remove the specified file from the target.

```
RPC to 10.105.57.106:57900
RPC start time: 21:07:57.089554
---------------------File Remove Request----------------------
remote_file: "harddisk:/sample.txt"
```

```
----------------------File Remove Response----------------------
RPC end time: 21:09:27.796217
File removal harddisk:/sample.txt successful
```

Reboot RPC

Reloads a requested target.

```
RPC to 10.105.57.106:57900
RPC start time: 21:12:49.811536
----------------------Reboot Request----------------------
RPC start time: 21:12:49.811561
method: COLD
message: "Test Reboot"
subcomponents {
origin: "openconfig-platform"
elem {
name: "components"
}
elem {
name: "component"
key {
key: "name"
value: "0/RP0"
}
}
elem {
name: "state"
}
elem {
name: "location"
}
}
----------------------Reboot Request----------------------
RPC end time: 21:12:50.023604
```

Set Package RPC

Places software package on the target.

```
RPC to 10.105.57.106:57900
RPC start time: 21:12:49.811536
----------------------Set Package Request----------------------
RPC start time: 15:33:34.378745
Sending SetPackage RPC
package {
filename: "harddisk:/giso_image_repo/<platform-version>-giso.iso"
activate: true
}
method: MD5
hash: "C\314\207\354\217\270=\021\341y\355\240\274\003\034\334"
RPC end time: 15:47:00.928361
```

Reboot Status RPC

Returns the status of reboot for the target.

```
RPC to 10.105.57.106:57900
RPC start time: 22:27:34.209473
----------------------Reboot Status Request----------------------
subcomponents {
origin: "openconfig-platform"
```

```
elem {
name: "components"
}
elem {
name: "component"
key {
key: "name"
value: "0/RP0"
}
}
elem {
name: "state"
}
elem
name: "location"
}
}

RPC end time: 22:27:34.319618

---------------------Reboot Status Response---------------------
Active : False
Wait : 0
When : 0
Reason : Test Reboot
Count : 0
```

Configure Interfaces Using Data Models in a gRPC Session

Google-defined remote procedure call () is an open-source RPC framework. gRPC supports IPv4 and IPv6 address families. The client applications use this protocol to request information from the router, and make configuration changes to the router.

The process for using data models involves:

- Obtain the data models.
- Establish a connection between the router and the client using gRPC communication protocol.
- Manage the configuration of the router from the client using data models.

Note Configure AAA authorization to restrict users from uncontrolled access. If AAA authorization is not configured, the command and data rules associated to the groups that are assigned to the user are bypassed. An IOS-XR user can have full read-write access to the IOS-XR configuration through Network Configuration Protocol (NETCONF), google-defined Remote Procedure Calls (gRPC) or any YANG-based agents. In order to avoid granting uncontrolled access, enable AAA authorization using **aaa authorization exec** command before setting up any configuration. For more information about configuring AAA authorization, see the *System Security Configuration Guide*.

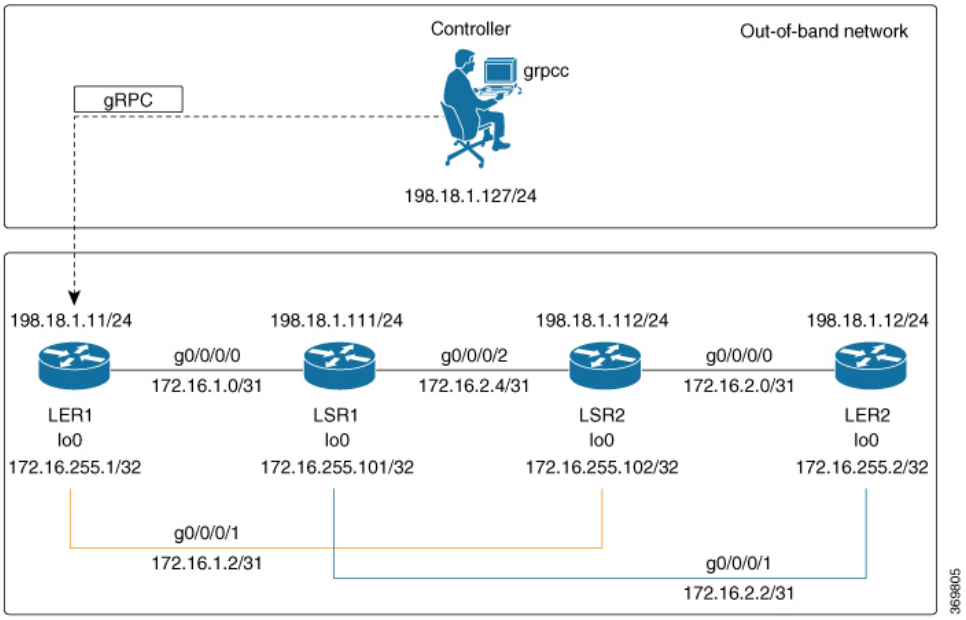
In this section, you use native data models to configure loopback and ethernet interfaces on a router using a gRPC session.

Consider a network topology with four routers and one controller. The network consists of label edge routers (LER) and label switching routers (LSR). Two routers LER1 and LER2 are label edge routers, and two routers

LSR1 and LSR2 are label switching routers. A host is the controller with a gRPC client. The controller communicates with all routers through an out-of-band network. All routers except LER1 are pre-configured with proper IP addressing and routing behavior. Interfaces between routers have a point-to-point configuration with `/31` addressing. Loopback prefixes use the format `172.16.255.x/32`.

The following image illustrates the network topology:

Figure 5: Network Topology for gRPC session



You use Cisco IOS XR native model `Cisco-IOS-XR-ifmgr-cfg.yang` to programmatically configure router LER1.

Before you begin

- Retrieve the list of YANG modules on the router using NETCONF monitoring RPC. For more information
- Configure Transport Layer Security (TLS). Enabling gRPC protocol uses the default HTTP/2 transport with no TLS. gRPC mandates AAA authentication and authorization for all gRPC requests. If TLS is not configured, the authentication credentials are transferred over the network unencrypted. Enabling TLS ensures that the credentials are secure and encrypted. Non-TLS mode can only be used in secure internal network.

Procedure

Step 1 Enable gRPC Protocol

To configure network devices and view operational data, gRPC proptocol must be enabled on the server. In this example, you enable gRPC protocol on LER1, the server.

Note
Cisco IOS XR 64-bit platforms support gRPC protocol. The 32-bit platforms do not support gRPC protocol.

a) Enable gRPC over an HTTP/2 connection.

Example:

```
Router#configure
Router(config)#grpc
Router(config-grpc)#port <port-number>
```

The port number ranges from 57344 to 57999. If a port number is unavailable, an error is displayed.

b) Set the session parameters.

Example:

```
Router(config)#grpc {address-family | certificate-authentication | dscp | max-concurrent-streams
 | max-request-per-user | max-request-total | max-streams |
max-streams-per-user | no-tls | tlsv1-disable | tls-cipher | tls-mutual | tls-trustpoint |
service-layer | vrf}
```

where:

- `address-family`: set the address family identifier type.
- `certificate-authentication`: enables certificate based authentication
- `dscp`: set QoS marking DSCP on transmitted gRPC.
- `max-request-per-user`: set the maximum concurrent requests per user.
- `max-request-total`: set the maximum concurrent requests in total.
- `max-streams`: set the maximum number of concurrent gRPC requests. The maximum subscription limit is 128 requests. The default is 32 requests.
- `max-streams-per-user`: set the maximum concurrent gRPC requests for each user. The maximum subscription limit is 128 requests. The default is 32 requests.
- `no-tls`: disable transport layer security (TLS). The TLS is enabled by default
- `tlsv1-disable`: disable TLS version 1.0
- `service-layer`: enable the grpc service layer configuration.

  This parameter is not supported in Cisco ASR 9000 Series Routers, Cisco NCS560 Series Routers, , and Cisco NCS540 Series Routers.
- `tls-cipher`: enable the gRPC TLS cipher suites.
- `tls-mutual`: set the mutual authentication.
- `tls-trustpoint`: configure trustpoint.
- `server-vrf`: enable server vrf.

After gRPC is enabled, use the YANG data models to manage network configurations.

Step 2 Configure the interfaces.

In this example, you configure interfaces using Cisco IOS XR native model `Cisco-IOS-XR-ifmgr-cfg.yang`. You gain an understanding about the various gRPC operations while you configure the interface. For the complete list of operations, see gRPC Operations, on page 40. In this example, you merge configurations with `merge-config` RPC, retreive operational statistics using `get-oper` RPC, and delete a configuration using `delete-config` RPC. You can explore the structure of the data model using YANG validator tools such as pyang.

LER1 is the gRPC server, and a command line utility `grpcc` is used as a client on the controller. This utility does not support YANG and, therefore, does not validate the data model. The server, LER1, validates the data mode.

Note
The OC interface maps all IP configurations for parent interface under a VLAN with index 0. Hence, do not configure a sub interface with tag 0.

a) Explore the XR configuration model for interfaces and its IPv4 augmentation.

Example:

```
controller:grpc$ pyang --format tree --tree-depth 3 Cisco-IOS-XR-ifmgr-cfg.yang
Cisco-IOS-XR-ipv4-io-cfg.yang
module: Cisco-IOS-XR-ifmgr-cfg
    +--rw global-interface-configuration
    | +--rw link-status? Link-status-enum
    +--rw interface-configurations
        +--rw interface-configuration* [active interface-name]
            +--rw dampening
            | ...
            +--rw mtus
            | ...
            +--rw encapsulation
            | ...
            +--rw shutdown? empty
            +--rw interface-virtual? empty
            +--rw secondary-admin-state? Secondary-admin-state-enum
            +--rw interface-mode-non-physical? Interface-mode-enum
            +--rw bandwidth? uint32
            +--rw link-status? empty
            +--rw description? string
            +--rw active Interface-active
            +--rw interface-name xr:Interface-name
            +--rw ipv4-io-cfg:ipv4-network
            | ...
            +--rw ipv4-io-cfg:ipv4-network-forwarding ...
```

b) Configure a loopback0 interface on LER1.

Example:

```
controller:grpc$ more xr-interfaces-lo0-cfg.json
{
 "Cisco-IOS-XR-ifmgr-cfg:interface-configurations":
  { "interface-configuration": [
    {
      "active": "act",
      "interface-name": "Loopback0",
      "description": "LOCAL TERMINATION ADDRESS",
      "interface-virtual": [
        null
       ],
       "Cisco-IOS-XR-ipv4-io-cfg:ipv4-network": {
        "addresses": {
            "primary": {
              "address": "172.16.255.1",
              "netmask": "255.255.255.255"
       }
      }
     }
    }
   ]
```

```
 }
}
```

c) Merge the configuration.

Example:

```
controller:grpc$ grpcc -username admin -password admin -oper merge-config
-server_addr 198.18.1.11:57400 -json_in_file xr-interfaces-gi0-cfg.json
emsMergeConfig: Sending ReqId 1
emsMergeConfig: Received ReqId 1, Response '
'
```

d) Configure the ethernet interface on LER1.

Example:

```
controller:grpc$ more xr-interfaces-gi0-cfg.json
{
 "Cisco-IOS-XR-ifmgr-cfg:interface-configurations": {
   "interface-configuration": [
    {
     "active": "act",
     "interface-name": "GigabitEthernet0/0/0/0",
     "description": "CONNECTS TO LSR1 (g0/0/0/0)",
     "Cisco-IOS-XR-ipv4-io-cfg:ipv4-network": {
        "addresses": {
         "primary": {
            "address": "172.16.1.0",
            "netmask": "255.255.255.254"
      }
     }
    }
   }
  ]
 }
}
```

e) Merge the configuration.

Example:

```
controller:grpc$ grpcc -username admin -password admin -oper merge-config
-server_addr 198.18.1.11:57400 -json_in_file xr-interfaces-gi0-cfg.json
emsMergeConfig: Sending ReqId 1
emsMergeConfig: Received ReqId 1, Response '
'
```

f) Enable the ethernet interface `GigabitEthernet 0/0/0/0` on LER1 to bring up the interface. To do this, delete `shutdown` configuration for the interface.

Example:

```
controller:grpc$ grpcc -username admin -password admin -oper delete-config
-server_addr 198.18.1.11:57400 -yang_path "$(< xr-interfaces-gi0-shutdown-cfg.json )"
emsDeleteConfig: Sending ReqId 1, yangJson {
 "Cisco-IOS-XR-ifmgr-cfg:interface-configurations": {
   "interface-configuration": [
   {
    "active": "act",
    "interface-name": "GigabitEthernet0/0/0/0",
    "shutdown": [
      null
```

```
        ]
       }
      ]
     }
    }
   emsDeleteConfig: Received ReqId 1, Response ''
```

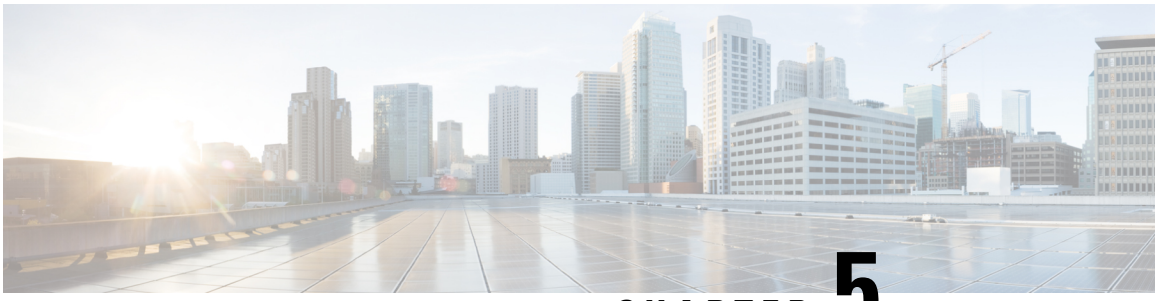
Step 3 Verify that the loopback interface and the ethernet interface on router LER1 are operational.

Example:

```
controller:grpc$ grpcc -username admin -password admin -oper get-oper
-server_addr 198.18.1.11:57400 -oper_yang_path "$(< xr-interfaces-briefs-oper-filter.json )"
emsGetOper: Sending ReqId 1, yangPath {
  "Cisco-IOS-XR-pfi-im-cmd-oper:interfaces": {
    "interface-briefs": [
      null
     ]
  }
}
{ "Cisco-IOS-XR-pfi-im-cmd-oper:interfaces": {
  "interface-briefs": {
    "interface-brief": [
    {
      "interface-name": "GigabitEthernet0/0/0/0",
      "interface": "GigabitEthernet0/0/0/0",
      "type": "IFT_GETHERNET",
      "state": "im-state-up",
      "actual-state": "im-state-up",
      "line-state": "im-state-up",
      "actual-line-state": "im-state-up",
      "encapsulation": "ether",
      "encapsulation-type-string": "ARPA",
      "mtu": 1514,
      "sub-interface-mtu-overhead": 0,
      "l2-transport": false,
      "bandwidth": 1000000
     },
     {
      "interface-name": "GigabitEthernet0/0/0/1",
      "interface": "GigabitEthernet0/0/0/1",
      "type": "IFT_GETHERNET",
      "state": "im-state-up",
      "actual-state": "im-state-up",
      "line-state": "im-state-up",
      "actual-line-state": "im-state-up",
      "encapsulation": "ether",
      "encapsulation-type-string": "ARPA",
      "mtu": 1514,
      "sub-interface-mtu-overhead": 0,
      "l2-transport": false,
      "bandwidth": 1000000
     },
     {
      "interface-name": "Loopback0",
      "interface": "Loopback0",
      "type": "IFT_LOOPBACK",
      "state": "im-state-up",
      "actual-state": "im-state-up",
      "line-state": "im-state-up",
      "actual-line-state": "im-state-up",
      "encapsulation": "loopback",
      "encapsulation-type-string": "Loopback",
```

```
      "mtu": 1500,
      "sub-interface-mtu-overhead": 0,
      "l2-transport": false,
      "bandwidth": 0
    },
    {
      "interface-name": "MgmtEth0/RP0/CPU0/0",
      "interface": "MgmtEth0/RP0/CPU0/0",
      "type": "IFT_ETHERNET",
      "state": "im-state-up",
      "actual-state": "im-state-up",
      "line-state": "im-state-up",
      "actual-line-state": "im-state-up",
      "encapsulation": "ether",
      "encapsulation-type-string": "ARPA",
      "mtu": 1514,
      "sub-interface-mtu-overhead": 0,
      "l2-transport": false,
      "bandwidth": 1000000
    },
    {
      "interface-name": "Null0",
      "interface": "Null0",
      "type": "IFT_NULL",
      "state": "im-state-up",
      "actual-state": "im-state-up",
      "line-state": "im-state-up",
      "actual-line-state": "im-state-up",
      "encapsulation": "null",
      "encapsulation-type-string": "Null",
      "mtu": 1500,
      "sub-interface-mtu-overhead": 0,
      "l2-transport": false,
      "bandwidth": 0
     }
    ]
   }
  }
}
emsGetOper: ReqId 1, byteRecv: 2325
```


In summary, router LER1, which had minimal configuration, is now programmatically configured using data models with an ethernet interface and is assigned a loopback address. Both these interfaces are operational and ready for network provisioning operations.



CHAPTER 5

Use Service Layer API to Bring your Controller on Cisco IOS XR Router

Bring your protocol or controller on IOS XR router to interact with the network infrastructure layer components using Service Layer API.

For example, you can bring your controller to gain control over the Routing Information Base (RIB) tables and many more use cases.

- Get to Know Service Layer API, on page 63
- Enable Service Layer, on page 66
- Write Your Service Layer Client API, on page 67

Get to Know Service Layer API

Service Layer API is a model-driven API over Google-defined remote procedure call (gRPC).

gRPC enables you to bring your applications, routing protocols, controllers in a rich set of languages including C++, Python, GO, and many more.

Service Layer API is available out of the box and no extra packages required.

In IOS XR, routing protocols use RIB, the MPLS label manager, BFD, and other modules, to program the forwarding plane. You can expose these protocols through the service layer API.

Benefits

The Service Layer API gives direct access to the Network Infrastructure Layer (Service-Adaptation Layer). Therefore, you have the following advantages:

- **High Performance**: Direct access to the Network Infrastructure Layer, without going through a Network state database, results in higher performance than equivalent Management APIs.

  For example, Batch updates straight to the Label Switching Data Base (LSDB), the Routing Information Base (RIB) (over gRPC). The LSDB stores label-to-address mappings for efficient traffic routing in Label-switching routers. And, RIB contains the active and potential routes to various network destinations.

- **Flexibility**: The Service Layer API gives you the flexibility to bring your Protocol or Controller over gRPC.

- **Offload low-level tasks to IOS XR**: IOS XR infrastructure layer handles the following. Hence, you can focus on higher-layer protocols and controller logic:
  - Conflict resolution
  - Transactional notifications
  - Data plane abstraction

Components of Service Layer API

The following are the components of the Service Layer API architecture:

- **Functionality Verticals/Domains**: The verticals define the broader capability categories supported by the API. The following are the supported verticals. Each vertical supports data structure and RPCs defined in gpb
  - **Initialization**: Handles global initialization, sets up an event notification channel using GRPC streaming capabilities.

    The initialization RPCs are mandatory. Use the initialization RPCs to connect a client to the gRPC server on the router. Also, to send heartbeats and termination requests from the server to the client.
  - **IPv4, IPv6 Route (RIB)**: Handles route manipulations (add, update, delete) for a certain VRF.
  - **MPLS**: Handles allocation of label blocks and any incoming MPLS label mapping to a forwarding function.
  - **Interface**: Handles subscription of the registered clients to the interface state event notifications.
  - **IPv4, IPv6 BFD**: Manages BFD sessions, and corresponding BFD session state notifications.
  - **Policy-Based Routing (PBR)**: Manages routing decisions based on user-defined policies rather than the default routing table.
- **Protobuf Schema/Model**: Use gRPC to model the service layer API.
- **gRPC**: gRPC utilizes GPB protobuf IDL by default to convert the models into bindings in various languages (c++, python, golang, and more). The gRPC server (running on the router) and the gRPC client use the generated bindings to serialize data and encode or decode the request or response between the server and the client.
- **Service Layer gRPC clients**: Based on the business needs, the gRPC clients for service layer can exist in one of the following ways:
  - On-box (agents runnning on their own sand-boxed third-party containers)
  - Off-box (within Controllers or other open-source tools)
- **gRPC Authentication Modes:**

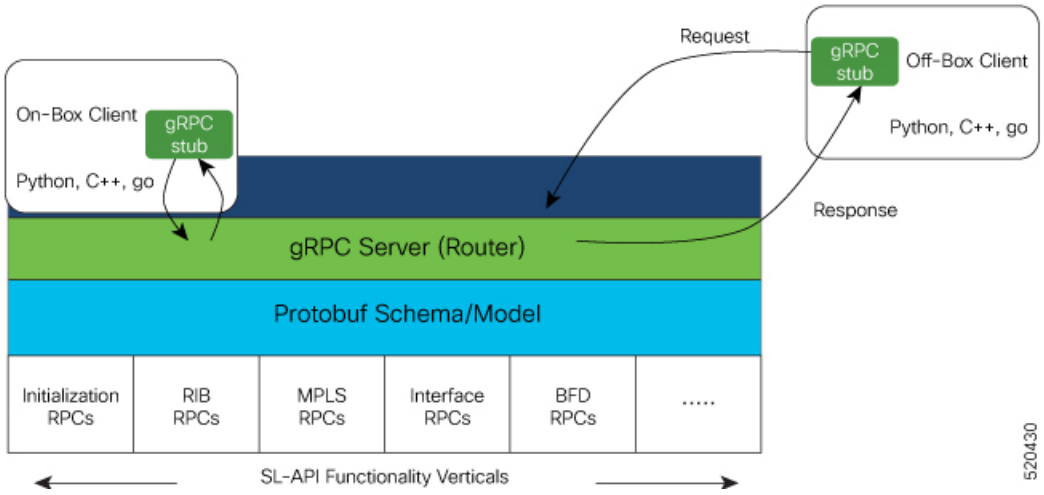
  gRPC supports the following authentication modes to secure communication between clients and servers. These authentication modes help ensure that only authorized entities can access the gRPC services, like gNOI, gRIBI, and P4RT. Upon receiving a gRPC request, the device will authenticate the user and perform various authorization checks to validate the user.

  The following table lists the authentication type and configuration requirements:

Table 8: Types of Authentication with Configuration

Type	Authentication Method	Authorization Method	Configuration Requirement	Requirement From Client
Metadata with TLS	username, password	username	**grpc**	username, password, and CA
Metadata without TLS	username, password	username	**grpc no-tls**	username, password
Metadata with Mutual TLS	username, password	username	**grpc tls-mutual**	username, password, client certificate, client key, and CA
Certificate based Authentication	client certificate's common name field	username from client certificate's common name field	**grpc tls-mutual** and **grpc certificate authentication**	client certificate, client key, and CA

Figure 6: Components of Service Layer API



Bring your controller

To bring your controller on IOS XR, first, enable the service layer on the router and then write your Service Layer Client API.

1. Enable Service Layer, on page 66
2. Write Your Service Layer Client API

Enable Service Layer

Procedure

Step 1 Enable the Service Layer.

Example:

```
Router#configure
Router(config)#grpc
Router(config-grpc)#port 57777
Router(config-grpc)#service-layer
Router(config-grpc)#no-tls
Router(config-grpc)#commit
```

The default port value for gNMI service port is 9339. You can set gNMI service port value from 57344 to 57999. Whereas, the default port value for gRIBI service port is default 9340. You can set gRIBI service port value from 57344 to 57999.

Step 2 Verify if the Service Layer is operational:

Example:

```
Router#show running-config grpc
Mon Nov  4 04:19:14.044 UTC
grpc
 port 57777
 no-tls
 service-layer
 !
!
```

Step 3 Verify the gRPC state.

Example:

```
Router#show service-layer state
Mon Feb 24 04:18:40.055 UTC
------------service layer state----------
config on:                   YES
standby connected :          NO
idt done:                    NO
blocked on ndt:              NO
connected to RIB for IPv4:   YES
connected to RIB for IPv6:   YES
Initialization state:        estab sync
pending requests:            0
BFD Connection:              UP
MPLS Connection:             UP
Interface Connection:        UP
Objects accepted:            NO
interface registered:        NO
bfd registered for IPv4:     NO
bfd registered for IPv6:     NO
```

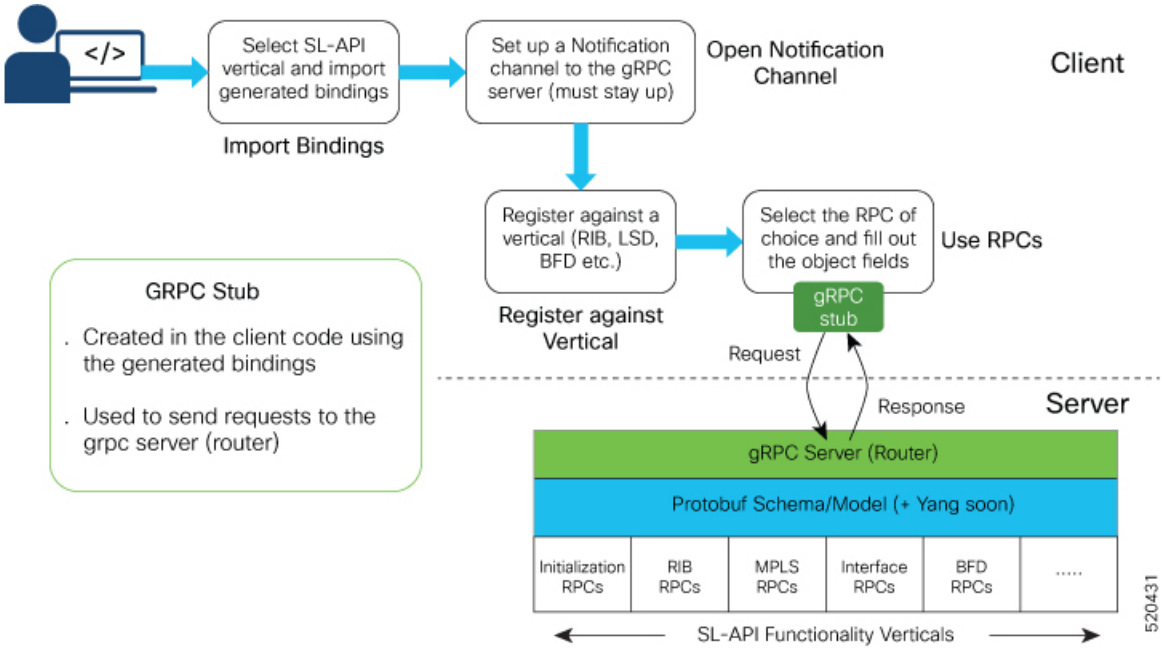
Write Your Service Layer Client API

You can write a Service Layer API based on your business needs. Follow these steps to write a Service Layer API client for a particular functionality vertical.

- **Import Bindings**: After generating the bindings, import the binding in your code.
- **Open Notification Channel:** Utilize the initialization functionality vertical to create a notification channel to register the client to the gRPC server running on the router.
- **Register against Vertical**: Register for a functionality vertical to utilize an RPC using the registration RPC before making calls. The system rejects any calls without prior registration.
- **Use RPCs**: Once registered against a vertical, select the RPC of your choice. Then complete the object fields in the gRPC stub.

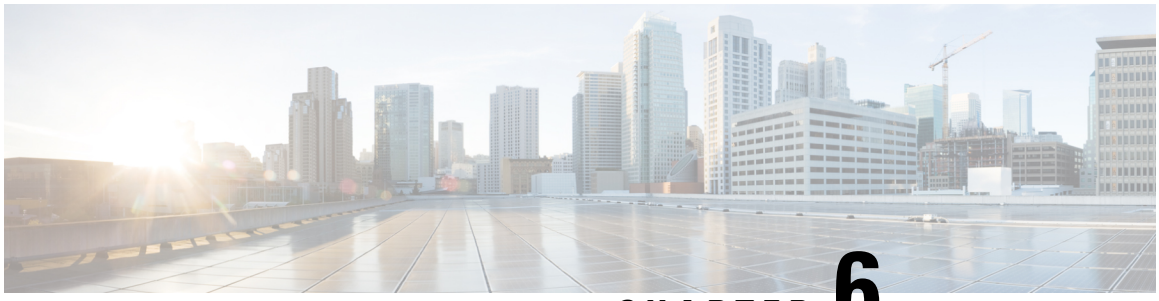
To know more about creating a Service Layer API, see. Cisco IOS-XR Service Layer.

Figure 7: Service Layer API Workflow



Note Removing VRF or interface configurations referenced by SL-API objects is not supported and can impact traffic. Ensure Service Layer API clients reroute traffic and update routing before making such changes.

To know more about using gRPC protocol, see Use gRPC Protocol to Define Network Operations with Data Models, on page 37 Chapter in Programmability Configuration Guide.



CHAPTER 6

Enhancements to Data Models

This section provides an overview of the enhancements made to data models.

- NETCONF Accounting Logs, on page 69
- Enhancements to Sensor Paths, on page 72
- Install Label in oc-platform Data Model, on page 74
- OAM for MPLS and SR-MPLS in mpls-ping and mpls-traceroute Data Models, on page 75
- OpenConfig YANG Model:MACsec, on page 80

NETCONF Accounting Logs

Table 9: Feature History Table

Feature Name	Release Information	Description
Accounting Records for NETCONF Operations	Release 7.6.1	Depending on the accounting configuration command you use, every NETCONF operation that the router performs is reported to the local server as syslog messages or remote AAA servers like TACACS+ as accounting messages, or both.

With this feature, you can view the accounting logs of all NETCONF operations such as `edit-config`, `get-config`, `get` operations that are performed on the router. The logs include the following data:

- RPC name
- Commit ID
- Session ID
- Message ID
- XPath

For more information, see *Implementing System Logging* chapter in the *System Monitoring Configuration Guide for Cisco NCS 5500 Series Routers*.

To enable NETCONF accounting logs, do the following steps:

Procedure

Step 1 Enter the configuration mode.

Example:

```
Router#conf t
```

Step 2 Create a method list for accounting.

Example:

```
Router(config)#aaa accounting commands default start-stop group tacacs+ local
```

Use one or both of the method list value to enable system accounting.

- **TACACS+**—The logs are stored on the TACACS+ server.
- **Local**—The logs are stored in a user-specified file on the router. The maximum file size is 2047 MB.

Step 3 Commit the configuration.

Example:

```
Router(config)#commit
```

Note
Syslog message about start and end of the session with details such as session ID, user, and remote address information is displayed for NETCONF operations only when both the EXEC accounting and local command accounting is enabled.

```
Router(config)#aaa accounting exec default start-stop group tacacs+
Router(config)#aaa accounting commands default start-stop local
```

Example

NETCONF Accounting Logs

With the RPC commit operation, the configuration changes are reported in the form of CLI commands. In this example, the `edit-config` operation is converted into its equivalent CLI `aaa accounting system default start-stop none` command in the logs; the user ID and session ID details are logged.

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:Mar 15 17:04:34.950 UTC: locald_DLRSC[233]: %SECURITY-LOCALD-6-LOCAL_CMD_ACCT
 :
 RPC CMD: "aaa accounting system default start-stop none" by <user> from TTY
netconf-3745105668
10.0.0.1 rpc_name commit rpc_commitid 808464433 rpc_sessid 3745105668
rpc_msgid 6ed74d71-1eda-4757-a4d6-8223b6fca588
```

For other RPCs, the data is reported in the form of XPaths. In this example, the NETCONF operation does not report equivalent CLI command. The RPC name is recorded in the logs.For syslogs with length greater than 400 characters, the log is split into two entries. Here, the XPathis split for brevity

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:Mar 15 30 18:39:45.412 UTC: locald_DLRSC[418]: %SECURITY-LOCALD-6-LOCAL_CMD_ACCT
 :
```

```
RPC CMD: rpc_name get by <user> from TTY netconf-921603460 10.0.0.1 rpc_sessid 921603460
rpc_msgid
101 xpath
Cisco-IOS-XR-wdsysmon-fd-proc-oper:process-monitoring/nodes/node[node-name=0/RP0/CPU0]/
process-name/proc-cpu-utilizations/proc-cpu-utilization[process-name=packet]Cisco-IOS-XR-pmengine-oper:
performance management/ethernet/ethernet-ports/ethernet-port/ethernet-current/ethernet-secon


RP/0/RP0/CPU0:Mar 15 18:39:45.412 UTC: locald_DLRSC[418]: %SECURITY-LOCALD-6-LOCAL_CMD_ACCT
 :
RPC CMD: d30/second30-ethersCisco-IOS-XR-pmengine-oper:performance-management/otu/otu-ports/
otu-port/otu-current/otu-minute15/otu-minute15fecsCisco-IOS-XR-wdsysmon-fd-proc-oper:process-monitoring/
nodes/node[node-name=0/RP0/CPU0]/process-name/proc-cpu-utilizations/proc-cpu-utilization[process-name=raw_ip]
```

TACACS+ Logs: The following example shows the logs from a TACACS+ server:

```
Commit changes:

Tue Mar 15 15:56:24 2022 192.0.2.254 root netconf-29961779 192.0.2.1 stop timezone=UTC
task_id=834
service=shell priv-lvl=0 commit_start=2021/10/11 22:56:19.882 commit_id=1000000022 rpc_
sessid=29961779 rpc_msgid=101 rpc_name=commit
Tue Mar 15 15:56:24 2022 192.0.2.254 root netconf-29961779 192.0.2.1 stop timezone=UTC
task_id=835
service=shell priv-lvl=0 cmd=interface GigabitEthernet0/0/0/2 <cr> commit_id=1000000022
rpc_sessid=29961779 rpc_msgid=101 rpc_name=commit
Tue Mar 15 15:56:24 2022 192.0.2.254 root netconf-29961779 192.0.2.1 stop timezone=UTC
task_id=836
service=shell priv-lvl=0 cmd= description test <cr> commit_id=1000000022 rpc_sessid=29961779

rpc_msgid=101 rpc_name=commit
Tue Mar 15 15:56:24 2022 192.0.2.254 root netconf-29961779 192.0.2.1 stop timezone=UTC
task_id=837
service=shell priv-lvl=0 cmd= mtu 1600 <cr> commit_id=1000000022 rpc_sessid=29961779
rpc_msgid=101 rpc_name=commit
Tue Mar 15 15:56:24 2022 192.0.2.254 root netconf-29961779 192.0.2.1 stop timezone=UTC
task_id=838
service=shell priv-lvl=0 cmd= ipv4 address 5.6.7.8 255.255.255.0 route-tag 100 <cr>
commit_id=1000000022
rpc_sessid=29961779 rpc_msgid=101 rpc_name=commit
Tue Mar 15 15:56:24 2022 192.0.2.254 root netconf-29961779 192.0.2.1 stop timezone=UTC
task_id=839
service=shell priv-lvl=0 cmd= shutdown <cr> commit_id=1000000022 rpc_sessid=29961779
rpc_msgid=101 rpc_name=commit
Tue Mar 15 15:56:25 2022 192.0.2.254 root netconf-29961779 192.0.2.1 stop timezone=UTC
task_id=840
service=shell priv-lvl=0 cmd=! <cr> commit_id=1000000022 rpc_sessid=29961779
rpc_msgid=101 rpc_name=commit
Tue Mar 15 15:56:25 2022 192.0.2.254 root netconf-29961779 192.0.2.1 stop timezone=UTC
task_id=841
service=shell priv-lvl=0 commit_end=2021/10/11 22:56:20.471 commit_id=1000000022
rpc_sessid=29961779 rpc_msgid=101 rpc_name=commit

Get-config:

Tue Mar 15 15:05:47 2022 192.0.2.254 root netconf-1616743444 192.0.2.1 stop timezone=UTC
task_id=519
service=shell priv-lvl=0 rpc_sessid=1616743444 rpc_msgid=101 rpc_name=get-config
rpc_xpath= /Cisco-IOS-XR-ifmgr-cfg:interface-configurations
```

Enhancements to Sensor Paths

This section provides an overview about the sensor paths introduced or enhanced across Cisco IOS XR releases.

Table 10: Feature History Table

Feature Name	Release Information	Description
Telemetry Support for OpenConfig Interfaces, IPv4 and IPv6 Addresses and State	Release 7.4.2	This feature provides telemetry gRPC Network Management Interface and Use gRPC Protocol to Define Network Operations with Data Models support for the following `openconfig-if-ip.yang` sensor paths. Previously, only NETCONF edit-config, get-config and get operations were supported. With this new feature, telemetry polling at a cadence or on-change can be retrieved for IPv4 and IPv6 data. • /oc-if:interfaces/oc-if:interface/oc-if:subinterfaces/oc-if:subinterface/ipv6/ • addresses/address[ip]/state/ip • addresses/address[ip]/state/prefix-length • addresses/address[ip]/state/origin • state/enabled • state/mtu • state/dup-addr-detect-transmits • state/counters/in-pkts • state/counters/in-octets • state/counters/out-pkts • state/counters/out-octets • state/openconfig-if-ip-ext:autoconf/create-global-addresses • /oc-if:interfaces/oc-if:interface/oc-if:subinterfaces/oc-if:subinterface/ipv4/ • addresses/address[ip]/state/ip • addresses/address[ip]/state/prefix-length • addresses/address[ip]/state/origin • state/mtu • state/dhcp-client • state/in-pkts • state/in-octets • state/out-pkts • state/out-octets You can access this data model from the Github repository.

Install Label in oc-platform Data Model

The openconfig-platform (oc-platform.yang) data model is enhanced to provide the following data:

- IOS XR software version (optionally with GISO label)
- Type, description, operational status of the component. For example, a CPU component reports its utilization, temperature or other physical properties.
- List of the committed IOS XR packages

To retrieve oc-platform information from a router via NETCONF, ensure you configured the router with the SH server and management interface:

```
Router#show run
Building configuration...
!! IOS XR Configuration version = 7.3.2
!! Last configuration change at Tue Sep  7 16:18:14 2016 by USER1
!
......
......
netconf-yang agent ssh
ssh server netconf vrf default
interface MgmtEth 0/RP0/CPU0/0
    no shut
    ipv4 address dhcp
```

The following example shows the enhanced `OPERATING_SYSTEM` node component (line card or route processor) of the oc-platform data model:

```
<component>
<name>IOSXR-NODE 0/RP0/CPU0</name>
<config>
<name>0/RP0/CPU0</name>
</config>
<state>
<name>0/RP0/CPU0</name>
<type xmlns:idx="http://openconfig.net/yang/platform-types">idx:OPERATING_SYSTEM</type>
<location>0/RP0/CPU0</location>
<description>IOS XR Operating System</description>
<software-version>7.3.2</software-version> ----------------------> Label Info
<removable>true</removable>
<oper-status xmlns:idx="http://openconfig.net/yang/platform-types">idx:ACTIVE</oper-status>
</state>
<subcomponents>
 <subcomponent>
  <name><platform>-af-ea-7.3.2v1.0.0.1</name>
  <config>
   <name><platform>-af-ea-7.3.2v1.0.0.1</name>
  </config>
  <state>
   <name><platform>-af-ea-7.3.2v1.0.0.1</name>
  </state>
 </subcomponent>
...
```

The following example shows the enhanced `OPERATING_SYSTEM_UPDATE` package component (RPMs) of the oc-platform data model:

```
<component>
<name>IOSXR-PKG/1 <platform>-isis-2.1.0.0-r732</name>
```

```
<config>
<name><platform>-isis-2.1.0.0-r732</name>
</config>
<state>
<name><platform>-isis-2.1.0.0-r732</name>
<type xmlns:idx="http://openconfig.net/yang/platform-types">idx:OPERATING_SYSTEM_UPDATE</type>
<description>IOS XR Operating System Update</description>
<software-version>7.3.2</software-version>----------------------> Label Info
<removable>true</removable>
<oper-status xmlns:idx="http://openconfig.net/yang/platform-types">idx:ACTIVE</oper-status>
</state>
</component>
```

Associated Commands

- **show install committed**—Shows the committed IOS XR packages.
- **show install committed summary**—Shows a summary of the committed packages along with the committed IOS XR version that is displayed as a label.

OAM for MPLS and SR-MPLS in mpls-ping and mpls-traceroute Data Models

Table 11: Feature History Table

Feature Name	Release Information	Description
YANG Data Models for MPLS OAM RPCs	Release 7.3.2	This feature introduces the `Cisco-IOS-XR-mpls-ping-act` and `Cisco-IOS-XR-mpls-traceroute-act` YANG data models to accommodate operations, administration and maintenance (OAM) RPCs for MPLS and SR-MPLS. You can access these Cisco IOS XR native data models from the Github repository.

The Cisco-IOS-XR-mpls-ping-act and Cisco-IOS-XR-mpls-traceroute-act YANG data models are introduced to provide the following options:

- Ping for MPLS:
  - MPLS IPv4 address
  - MPLS TE
  - FEC-129 Pseudowire
  - FEC-128 Pseudowire
  - Multisegment Pseudowire

- Ping for SR-MPLS:
  - SR policy name or BSID with LSP end-point
  - SR MPLS IPv4 address
  - SR Nil-FEC labels
  - SR Flexible Algorithm
- Traceroute for MPLS:
  - MPLS IPv4 address
  - MPLS TE
- Traceroute for SR-MPLS:
  - SR policy name or BSID with LSP end-point
  - SR MPLS IPv4 address
  - SR Nil-FEC labels
  - SR Flexible Algorithm

The following example shows the ping operation for an SR policy and LSP end-point:

```
<mpls-ping xmlns="http://cisco.com/ns/yang/Cisco-IOS-XR-mpls-ping-act">
  <sr-mpls>
  <policy>
    <name>srte_c_10_ep_10.10.10.1</name>
      <lsp-endpoint>10.10.10.4</lsp-endpoint>
  </policy>
  </sr-mpls>
  <request-options-parameters>
    <brief>true</brief>
  </request-options-parameters>
</mpls-ping>
```

Response:

```
<?xml version="1.0"?>
 <mpls-ping-response xmlns="http://cisco.com/ns/yang/Cisco-IOS-XR-mpls-ping-act">
  <request-options-parameters>
   <exp>0</exp>
   <fec>false</fec>
   <interval>0</interval>
   <ddmap>false</ddmap>
   <force-explicit-null>false</force-explicit-null>
   <packet-output>
    <interface-name>None</interface-name>
    <next-hop>0.0.0.0</next-hop>
   </packet-output>
   <pad>abcd</pad>
   <repeat>5</repeat>
   <reply>
    <dscp>255</dscp>
    <reply-mode>default</reply-mode>
    <pad-tlv>false</pad-tlv>
   </reply>
   <size>100</size>
```

```
   <source>0.0.0.0</source>
   <destination>127.0.0.1</destination>
   <sweep>
    <minimum>100</minimum>
    <maximum>100</maximum>
    <increment>1</increment>
   </sweep>
   <brief>true</brief>
   <timeout>2</timeout>
   <ttl>255</ttl>
  </request-options-parameters>
  <replies>
   <reply>
    <reply-index>1</reply-index>
    <return-code>3</return-code>
    <return-char>!</return-char>
    <reply-addr>14.14.14.3</reply-addr>
    <size>100</size>
   </reply>
   <reply>
    <reply-index>2</reply-index>
    <return-code>3</return-code>
    <return-char>!</return-char>
    <reply-addr>14.14.14.3</reply-addr>
    <size>100</size>
   </reply>
   <reply>
    <reply-index>3</reply-index>
    <return-code>3</return-code>
    <return-char>!</return-char>
    <reply-addr>14.14.14.3</reply-addr>
    <size>100</size>
   </reply>
   <reply>
    <reply-index>4</reply-index>
    <return-code>3</return-code>
    <return-char>!</return-char>
    <reply-addr>14.14.14.3</reply-addr>
    <size>100</size>
   </reply>
   <reply>
    <reply-index>5</reply-index>
    <return-code>3</return-code>
    <return-char>!</return-char>
    <reply-addr>14.14.14.3</reply-addr>
    <size>100</size>
   </reply>
  </replies>
 </mpls-ping-response>
```

The following example shows the ping operation for an SR policy BSID and LSP end-point:

```
<mpls-ping xmlns="http://cisco.com/ns/yang/Cisco-IOS-XR-mpls-ping-act">
<sr-mpls>
<policy>
    <bsid>1000</bsid>
    <lsp-endpoint>10.10.10.4</lsp-endpoint>
</policy>
</sr-mpls>
<request-options-parameters>
    <brief>true</brief>
</request-options-parameters>
</mpls-ping>
```

Response:

```
<?xml version="1.0"?>
 <mpls-ping-response xmlns="http://cisco.com/ns/yang/Cisco-IOS-XR-mpls-ping-act">
  <request-options-parameters>
   <exp>0</exp>
   <fec>false</fec>
   <interval>0</interval>
   <ddmap>false</ddmap>
   <force-explicit-null>false</force-explicit-null>
   <packet-output>
    <interface-name>None</interface-name>
    <next-hop>0.0.0.0</next-hop>
   </packet-output>
   <pad>abcd</pad>
   <repeat>5</repeat>
   <reply>
    <dscp>255</dscp>
    <reply-mode>default</reply-mode>
    <pad-tlv>false</pad-tlv>
   </reply>
   <size>100</size>
   <source>0.0.0.0</source>
   <destination>127.0.0.1</destination>
   <sweep>
    <minimum>100</minimum>
    <maximum>100</maximum>
    <increment>1</increment>
   </sweep>
   <brief>true</brief>
   <timeout>2</timeout>
   <ttl>255</ttl>
  </request-options-parameters>
  <replies>
   <reply>
    <reply-index>1</reply-index>
    <return-code>3</return-code>
    <return-char>!</return-char>
    <reply-addr>14.14.14.3</reply-addr>
    <size>100</size>
   </reply>
   <reply>
    <reply-index>2</reply-index>
    <return-code>3</return-code>
    <return-char>!</return-char>
    <reply-addr>14.14.14.3</reply-addr>
    <size>100</size>
   </reply>
   <reply>
    <reply-index>3</reply-index>
    <return-code>3</return-code>
    <return-char>!</return-char>
    <reply-addr>14.14.14.3</reply-addr>
    <size>100</size>
   </reply>
   <reply>
    <reply-index>4</reply-index>
    <return-code>3</return-code>
    <return-char>!</return-char>
    <reply-addr>14.14.14.3</reply-addr>
    <size>100</size>
   </reply>
   <reply>
    <reply-index>5</reply-index>
```

```
    <return-code>3</return-code>
    <return-char>!</return-char>
    <reply-addr>14.14.14.3</reply-addr>
    <size>100</size>
   </reply>
  </replies>
 </mpls-ping-response>
```

The following example shows the traceroute operation for an SR policy and LSP end-point:

```
<mpls-traceroute xmlns="http://cisco.com/ns/yang/Cisco-IOS-XR-mpls-traceroute-act">
<sr-mpls>
<policy>
    <name>srte_c_10_ep_10.10.10.1</name>
    <lsp-endpoint>10.10.10.4</lsp-endpoint>
</policy>
</sr-mpls>
<request-options-parameters>
    <brief>true</brief>
</request-options-parameters>
</mpls-traceroute>
```

Response:

```
<?xml version="1.0"?>
 <mpls-traceroute-response xmlns="http://cisco.com/ns/yang/Cisco-IOS-XR-mpls-traceroute-act">

  <request-options-parameters>
   <exp>0</exp>
   <fec>false</fec>
   <ddmap>false</ddmap>
   <force-explicit-null>false</force-explicit-null>
   <packet-output>
    <interface-name>None</interface-name>
    <next-hop>0.0.0.0</next-hop>
   </packet-output>
   <reply>
    <dscp>255</dscp>
    <reply-mode>default</reply-mode>
   </reply>
   <source>0.0.0.0</source>
   <destination>127.0.0.1</destination>
   <brief>true</brief>
   <timeout>2</timeout>
   <ttl>30</ttl>
  </request-options-parameters>
  <paths>
   <path>
    <path-index>0</path-index>
    <hops>
    <hop>
        <hop-index>0</hop-index>
        <hop-origin-ip>11.11.11.1</hop-origin-ip>
        <hop-destination-ip>11.11.11.2</hop-destination-ip>
        <mtu>1500</mtu>
        <dsmap-label-stack>
            <dsmap-label>
                <label>16003</label>
            </dsmap-label>
        </dsmap-label-stack>
        <return-code>0</return-code>
        <return-char> </return-char>
    </hop>
```

```
  <hop>
      <hop-index>1</hop-index>
      <hop-origin-ip>11.11.11.2</hop-origin-ip>
      <hop-destination-ip>14.14.14.3</hop-destination-ip>
      <mtu>1500</mtu>
      <dsmap-label-stack>
          <dsmap-label>
              <label>3</label>
          </dsmap-label>
      </dsmap-label-stack>
      <return-code>8</return-code>
      <return-char>L</return-char>
  </hop>
  <hop>
      <hop-index>2</hop-index>
      <hop-origin-ip>14.14.14.3</hop-origin-ip>
      <hop-destination-ip></hop-destination-ip>
      <mtu>0</mtu>
      <dsmap-label-stack/>
      <return-code>3</return-code>
      <return-char>!</return-char>
  </hop>
  </hops>
 </path>
</paths>
</mpls-traceroute-response>
```

OpenConfig YANG Model:MACsec

Table 12: Feature History Table

Feature Name	Release Information	Description
OpenConfig YANG Model:MACsec	Release 7.5.2	You can now use the OpenConfig YANG data model to define the MACsec key chain and policy, and apply MACsec encryption on a router interface. You can access the OC data model from the Github repository.

With the OpenConfig YANG Model:MACsec, you can also retrieve operational data from the NETCONF agent using gRPC. By automating processes that are repeated across multiple network elements, you can leverage the YANG models for MACsec.

You can use the following operations to stream Telemetry data by sending a request to the NETCONF agent:

- <get>
- <get-config>
- <edit-config>

Subscribe to the following sensor paths to send a pull request to the YANG leaf, list, or container:

- mka/key-chains/key-chain/mka-keys/mka-key

- interfaces/interface/mka
- interfaces/interface
- mka/policies/policy
- interfaces/interface/scsa-rx/scsa-rx
- interfaces/interface/scsa-tx/scsa-tx

Limitation

- The current implementation of Cisco IOS XR supports only the local time zone configuration in the YYYY-MM-DDTHH:MM:SS format for the following paths:
  - /macsec/mka/key-chains/key-chain/mka-keys/mka-key/config/valid-date-time
  - /macsec/mka/key-chains/key-chain/mka-keys/mka-key/config/expiration-date-time
  - /macsec/mka/key-chains/key-chain/mka-keys/mka-key/state/valid-date-time
  - /macsec/mka/key-chains/key-chain/mka-keys/mka-key/state/expiration-date-time
- Under the MACsec policy, you can disable the delay-protection and include-icv-indicator leaves only by using the delete operation. You cannot modify the configuration by updating the default field value, from true to false. This codeblock shows a sample delete operation:

```
<config>
<delay-protection nc:operation="delete"/>
<include-icv-indicator nc:operation="delete"/>
</config>
```

Running Configuration

```
RP/0/0/CPU0:ios#show running-config
Tue Apr 19 21:36:08.882 IST
Building configuration...
!! IOS XR Configuration 0.0.0
!! Last configuration change at Thu Apr 14 16:25:17 2022 by UNKNOWN
key chain kc
 macsec
  key 1234
   key-string password
00554155500E5D5157701E1D5D4C53404A5A5E577E7E727F6B647040534355560E080A00005B554F4E080A0407070303530A54540C0252445E550958525A771B16
 cryptographic-algorithm aes-256-cmac
   lifetime 00:01:01 january 01 2021 infinite
  netconf-yang agent
 ssh
interface GigabitEthernet0/0/0/0
 shutdown
interface GigabitEthernet0/0/0/1
 macsec psk-keychain kc
interface GigabitEthernet0/0/0/2
 macsec psk-keychain kc policy mp
interface GigabitEthernet0/0/0/3
 shutdown
interface GigabitEthernet0/0/0/4
 shutdown
macsec-policy mp
 cipher-suite GCM-AES-XPN-256
 key-server-priority 4
```

```
ssh server v2
end
```

RPC Request for get-config

```
<get-config>
   <source>
      <running/>
   </source>
        <filter>
          <macsec xmlns="http://openconfig.net/yang/macsec">
          </macsec>
        </filter>
</get-config>
```

RPC Response for get-config

```
<?xml version="1.0"?>
<rpc-reply message-id="101" xmlns="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:netconf:base:1.0">
 <data>
  <macsec xmlns="http://openconfig.net/yang/macsec">
   <mka>
    <policies>
     <policy>
      <name>mp</name>
      <config>
       <name>mp</name>
       <macsec-cipher-suite>gcm-aes-xpn-256</macsec-cipher-suite>
       <key-server-priority>4</key-server-priority>
      </config>
     </policy>
    </policies>
    <key-chains>
     <key-chain>
      <name>kc</name>
      <config>
       <name>kc</name>
      </config>
      <mka-keys>
       <mka-key>
        <id>1234</id>
        <config>
         <id>1234</id>
         <cryptographic-algorithm>AES_256_CMAC</cryptographic-algorithm>
         <valid-date-time>2021-01-01T00:01:01</valid-date-time>
         <expiration-date-time>NO_EXPIRATION</expiration-date-time>
        </config>
       </mka-key>
      </mka-keys>
     </key-chain>
    </key-chains>
   </mka>
   <interfaces>
    <interface>
     <name>GigabitEthernet0/0/0/1</name>
     <config>
      <name>GigabitEthernet0/0/0/1</name>
     </config>
     <mka>
      <config>
       <key-chain>kc</key-chain>
      </config>
     </mka>
```

```
    </interface>
    <interface>
     <name>GigabitEthernet0/0/0/2</name>
     <config>
      <name>GigabitEthernet0/0/0/2</name>
     </config>
     <mka>
      <config>
       <key-chain>kc</key-chain>
       <mka-policy>mp</mka-policy>
      </config>
     </mka>
    </interface>
   </interfaces>
  </macsec>
 </data>
</rpc-reply>
```

RPC Request for get

```
<get>
   <filter>
     <macsec xmlns="http://openconfig.net/yang/macsec">
     </macsec>
     </filter>
</get>
```

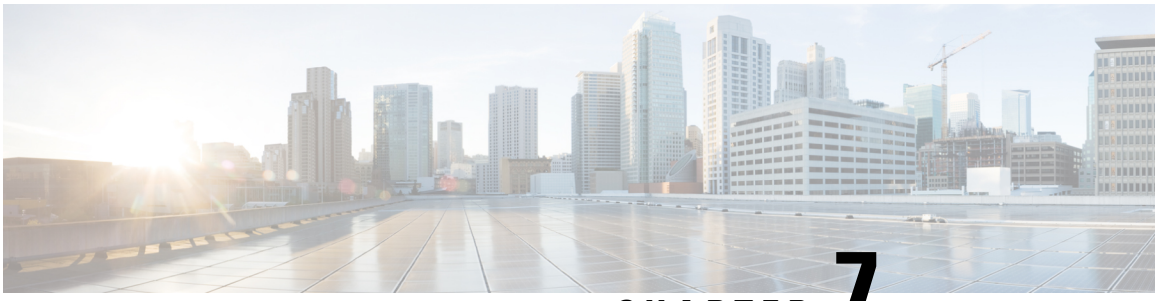
RPC Response for get

```
<?xml version="1.0"?>
<rpc-reply message-id="101" xmlns="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:netconf:base:1.0">
 <data>
  <macsec xmlns="http://openconfig.net/yang/macsec">
   <mka>
    <policies>
     <policy>
      <name>mp</name>
      <config>
       <name>mp</name>
       <macsec-cipher-suite>gcm-aes-xpn-256</macsec-cipher-suite>
       <key-server-priority>4</key-server-priority>
      </config>
      <state>
       <name>mp</name>
       <key-server-priority>4</key-server-priority>
       <macsec-cipher-suite>gcm-aes-xpn256</macsec-cipher-suite>
       <confidentiality-offset>zero-bytes</confidentiality-offset>
       <delay-protection>false</delay-protection>
       <include-icv-indicator>false</include-icv-indicator>
       <sak-rekey-interval>0</sak-rekey-interval>
      </state>
     </policy>
     <policy>
      <name>DEFAULT-POLICY</name>
      <state>
       <name>DEFAULT-POLICY</name>
       <key-server-priority>16</key-server-priority>
       <macsec-cipher-suite>gcm-aes-xpn256</macsec-cipher-suite>
       <confidentiality-offset>zero-bytes</confidentiality-offset>
       <delay-protection>false</delay-protection>
       <include-icv-indicator>false</include-icv-indicator>
       <sak-rekey-interval>0</sak-rekey-interval>
      </state>
```

```
  </policy>
 </policies>
 <key-chains>
  <key-chain>
   <name>kc</name>
   <config>
    <name>kc</name>
   </config>
   <mka-keys>
    <mka-key>
     <id>1234</id>
     <config>
      <id>1234</id>
      <cryptographic-algorithm>AES_256_CMAC</cryptographic-algorithm>
      <valid-date-time>2021-01-01T00:01:01</valid-date-time>
      <expiration-date-time>NO_EXPIRATION</expiration-date-time>
     </config>
     <state>
      <id>1234</id>
      <cryptographic-algorithm>AES_256_CMAC</cryptographic-algorithm>
      <valid-date-time>2021-01-01T00:01:01</valid-date-time>
      <expiration-date-time>NO_EXPIRATION</expiration-date-time>
     </state>
    </mka-key>
   </mka-keys>
   <state>
    <name>kc</name>
   </state>
  </key-chain>
 </key-chains>
</mka>
<interfaces>
 <interface>
  <name>GigabitEthernet0_0_0_1</name>
  <state>
   <name>GigabitEthernet0_0_0_1</name>
   <counters>
    <tx-untagged-pkts>8</tx-untagged-pkts>
    <rx-untagged-pkts>0</rx-untagged-pkts>
    <rx-badtag-pkts>2</rx-badtag-pkts>
    <rx-unknownsci-pkts>3</rx-unknownsci-pkts>
    <rx-nosci-pkts>4</rx-nosci-pkts>
   </counters>
  </state>
  <mka>
   <state>
    <mka-policy>DEFAULT-POLICY</mka-policy>
    <key-chain>kc</key-chain>
    <counters>
     <in-mkpdu>0</in-mkpdu>
     <in-sak-mkpdu>0</in-sak-mkpdu>
     <out-mkpdu>225271</out-mkpdu>
     <out-sak-mkpdu>0</out-sak-mkpdu>
    </counters>
   </state>
  </mka>
  <scsa-tx>
   <scsa-tx>
    <sci-tx>024f88a08c9d0001</sci-tx>
    <state>
     <sci-tx>024f88a08c9d0001</sci-tx>
     <counters>
      <sc-encrypted>0</sc-encrypted>
      <sa-encrypted>0</sa-encrypted>
```

```
    </counters>
   </state>
  </scsa-tx>
 </scsa-tx>
</interface>
<interface>
 <name>GigabitEthernet0_0_0_2</name>
 <state>
  <name>GigabitEthernet0_0_0_2</name>
  <counters>
   <tx-untagged-pkts>8</tx-untagged-pkts>
   <rx-untagged-pkts>0</rx-untagged-pkts>
   <rx-badtag-pkts>2</rx-badtag-pkts>
   <rx-unknownsci-pkts>3</rx-unknownsci-pkts>
   <rx-nosci-pkts>4</rx-nosci-pkts>
  </counters>
 </state>
 <mka>
  <state>
   <mka-policy>mp</mka-policy>
   <key-chain>kc</key-chain>
   <counters>
    <in-mkpdu>0</in-mkpdu>
    <in-sak-mkpdu>0</in-sak-mkpdu>
    <out-mkpdu>225271</out-mkpdu>
    <out-sak-mkpdu>0</out-sak-mkpdu>
   </counters>
  </state>
 </mka>
 <scsa-tx>
  <scsa-tx>
   <sci-tx>0246c822daae0001</sci-tx>
   <state>
    <sci-tx>0246c822daae0001</sci-tx>
    <counters>
     <sc-encrypted>0</sc-encrypted>
     <sa-encrypted>0</sa-encrypted>
    </counters>
   </state>
  </scsa-tx>
 </scsa-tx>
</interface>
<interface>
 <name>GigabitEthernet0/0/0/1</name>
 <config>
  <name>GigabitEthernet0/0/0/1</name>
 </config>
 <mka>
  <config>
   <key-chain>kc</key-chain>
  </config>
 </mka>
</interface>
<interface>
 <name>GigabitEthernet0/0/0/2</name>
 <config>
  <name>GigabitEthernet0/0/0/2</name>
 </config>
 <mka>
  <config>
   <key-chain>kc</key-chain>
   <mka-policy>mp</mka-policy>
  </config>
 </mka>
```

```
    </interface>
   </interfaces>
  </macsec>
 </data>
</rpc-reply>
```



CHAPTER 7

Unified Data Models

CLI-based YANG data models, also known as unified configuration models are introduced in Cisco IOS XR Software Release 7.0.1. The unified models provide a full coverage of the router functionality, and serves as a single abstraction for YANG and CLI commands. Unified models are generated from the CLI and replaces the native schema-based models.

The unified models are available in `pkg/yang` location. The presence of `um` in the model name indicates that the model is a unified model. For example, Cisco-IOS-XR-**um**-<feature>-cfg.yang.

You can access the models supported on the router using the following command:

```
Router#run
[node]$cd /pkg/yang
[node:pkg/yang]$ls
```

The unified models are also available in the Github repository.

• Unified Configuration Models, on page 87

Unified Configuration Models

Table 13: Feature History Table

Feature Name	Release Information	Description
Unified Data Model to map script file to the custom OID	Release 7.5.3	Use the `Cisco-IOS-XR-um-script-server-cfg.yang` unified data model to map script file to the custom OID.
Unified Data Model to enable sending all VRF interface information to cIpMRouteInterfaceTable	Release 7.5.1	Use the `Cisco-IOS-XR-um-snmp-server mroutemib send-all-cfg.yang` unified data model to enable he functionality of sending all vrf interface info for cIpMRouteInterfaceTable.
Unified Data Model to configure Multicast VRF OLE interface	Release 7.5.1	Use the `Cisco-IOS-XR-um-snmp-server-mroutemib-cfg.yang` unified data model for configurations related to IPMROUTE-MIB.

Feature Name	Release Information	Description
Unified Data Model to disable the login banner on console port	Release 7.5.1	Use the `Cisco-IOS-XR-um-service-sysadmin-login-banner-cfg.yang` unified data model to disable the login banner on console port.
Transitioning Native Models to Unified Models (UM)	Release 7.4.1	Unified models are CLI-based YANG models that are designed to replace the native schema-based models. UM models are generated directly from the IOS XR CLIs and mirror them in several ways. This results in improved usability and faster adoption of YANG models. You can access the new unified models from the Github repository.

The following table lists the unified models supported on Cisco IOS XR routers.

Table 14: Unified Models

Unified Models	Introduced in Release
Cisco-IOS-XR-um-script-server-cfg	Release 7.5.3
Cisco-IOS-XR-um-script-cfg	Release 7.5.3
Cisco-IOS-XR-um-fpd-cfg	Release 7.7.1
Cisco-IOS-XR-um-hw-module-service-cfg	Release 7.5.2
Cisco-IOS-XR-um-cef-pd-cfg	Release 7.5.2
Cisco-IOS-XR-um-if-ipsubscriber-cfg	Release 7.5.1
Cisco-IOS-XR-um-session-redundancy-cfg	Release 7.5.1
Cisco-IOS-XR-um-subscriber-accounting-cfg	Release 7.5.1
Cisco-IOS-XR-um-subscriber-cfg	Release 7.5.1
Cisco-IOS-XR-um-subscriber-redundancy-cfg	Release 7.5.1
Cisco-IOS-XR-um-dyn-tmpl-opendns-cfg	Release 7.5.1
Cisco-IOS-XR-um-dynamic-template-cfg	Release 7.5.1
Cisco-IOS-XR-um-dynamic-template-cfg	Release 7.5.1
Cisco-IOS-XR-um-lpts-profiling-cfg	Release 7.5.1
Cisco-IOS-XR-um-ppp-cfg	Release 7.5.1
Cisco-IOS-XR-um-pppoe-cfg	Release 7.5.1
Cisco-IOS-XR-um-vpdn-cfg	Release 7.5.1

Unified Models	Introduced in Release
Cisco-IOS-XR-um-aaa-subscriber-cfg	Release 7.5.1
Cisco-IOS-XR-um-dynamic-template-ipv4-cfg	Release 7.5.1
Cisco-IOS-XR-um-dynamic-template-ipv6-cfg	Release 7.5.1
Cisco-IOS-XR-um-dynamic-template-vrf-cfg	Release 7.5.1
Cisco-IOS-XR-um-mibs-subscriber-cfg	Release 7.5.1
Cisco-IOS-XR-um-dyn-tmpl-monitor-session-cfg	Release 7.5.1
Cisco-IOS-XR-um-l2tp-class-cfg	Release 7.5.1
Cisco-IOS-XR-um-dynamic-template-dhcpv6d-cfg	Release 7.5.1
Cisco-IOS-XR-um-dyn-tmpl-service-policy-cfg	Release 7.5.1
Cisco-IOS-XR-um-snmp-server-mroutemib-cfg	Release 7.5.1
Cisco-IOS-XR-um-snmp-server mroutemib send-all-cfg	Release 7.5.1
Cisco-IOS-XR-um-service-sysadmin-login-banner-cfg	Release 7.5.1
Cisco-IOS-XR-um-aaa-cfg	Release 7.4.1
Cisco-IOS-XR-um-aaa-diameter-cfg	Release 7.4.1
Cisco-IOS-XR-um-aaa-nacm-cfg	Release 7.4.1
Cisco-IOS-XR-um-aaa-tacacs-server-cfg	Release 7.4.1
Cisco-IOS-XR-um-aaa-task-user-cfg	Release 7.4.1
Cisco-IOS-XR-um-banner-cfg	Release 7.4.1
Cisco-IOS-XR-um-bfd-sbfd-cfg	Release 7.4.1
Cisco-IOS-XR-um-call-home-cfg	Release 7.4.1
Cisco-IOS-XR-um-cdp-cfg	Release 7.4.1
Cisco-IOS-XR-um-cef-accounting-cfg	Release 7.4.1
Cisco-IOS-XR-um-cfg-mibs-cfg	Release 7.4.1
Cisco-IOS-XR-um-cli-alias-cfg	Release 7.4.1
Cisco-IOS-XR-um-clock-cfg	Release 7.4.1
Cisco-IOS-XR-um-config-hostname-cfg	Release 7.4.1
Cisco-IOS-XR-um-cont-breakout-cfg	Release 7.4.1
Cisco-IOS-XR-um-cont-optics-cfg	Release 7.4.1

Unified Models	Introduced in Release
Cisco-IOS-XR-um-control-plane-cfg	Release 7.4.1
Cisco-IOS-XR-um-crypto-cfg	Release 7.4.1
Cisco-IOS-XR-um-domain-cfg	Release 7.4.1
Cisco-IOS-XR-um-ethernet-cfm-cfg	Release 7.4.1
Cisco-IOS-XR-um-ethernet-oam-cfg	Release 7.4.1
Cisco-IOS-XR-um-exception-cfg	Release 7.4.1
Cisco-IOS-XR-um-flowspec-cfg	Release 7.4.1
Cisco-IOS-XR-um-frequency-synchronization-cfg	Release 7.4.1
Cisco-IOS-XR-um-hostname-cfg	Release 7.4.1
Cisco-IOS-XR-um-hw-module-port-range-cfg	Release 7.4.1
Cisco-IOS-XR-um-hw-module-profile-cfg	Release 7.4.1
Cisco-IOS-XR-um-ip-virtual-cfg	Release 7.4.1
Cisco-IOS-XR-um-ipsla-cfg	Release 7.4.1
Cisco-IOS-XR-um-l2vpn-cfg	Release 7.4.1
Cisco-IOS-XR-um-line-cfg	Release 7.4.1
Cisco-IOS-XR-um-line-exec-timeout-cfg	Release 7.4.1
Cisco-IOS-XR-um-line-general-cfg	Release 7.4.1
Cisco-IOS-XR-um-line-timestamp-cfg	Release 7.4.1
Cisco-IOS-XR-um-lldp-cfg	Release 7.4.1
Cisco-IOS-XR-um-location-cfg	Release 7.4.1
Cisco-IOS-XR-um-logging-cfg	Release 7.4.1
Cisco-IOS-XR-um-logging-correlator-cfg	Release 7.4.1
Cisco-IOS-XR-um-lpts-pifib-cfg	Release 7.4.1
Cisco-IOS-XR-um-lpts-pifib-domain-cfg	Release 7.4.1
Cisco-IOS-XR-um-lpts-pifib-dynamic-flows-cfg	Release 7.4.1
Cisco-IOS-XR-um-mibs-cbqosmib-cfg	Release 7.4.1
Cisco-IOS-XR-um-mibs-fabric-cfg	Release 7.4.1
Cisco-IOS-XR-um-mibs-ifmib-cfg	Release 7.4.1

Unified Models	Introduced in Release
Cisco-IOS-XR-um-mibs-rfmib-cfg	Release 7.4.1
Cisco-IOS-XR-um-mibs-sensormib-cfg	Release 7.4.1
Cisco-IOS-XR-um-monitor-session-cfg	Release 7.4.1
Cisco-IOS-XR-um-mpls-oam-cfg	Release 7.4.1
Cisco-IOS-XR-um-ntp-cfg	Release 7.4.1
Cisco-IOS-XR-um-pce-cfg	Release 7.4.1
Cisco-IOS-XR-um-pool-cfg	Release 7.4.1
Cisco-IOS-XR-um-priority-flow-control-cfg	Release 7.4.1
Cisco-IOS-XR-um-rcc-cfg	Release 7.4.1
Cisco-IOS-XR-um-router-hsrp-cfg	Release 7.4.1
Cisco-IOS-XR-um-router-vrrp-cfg	Release 7.4.1
Cisco-IOS-XR-um-service-timestamps-cfg	Release 7.4.1
Cisco-IOS-XR-um-ssh-cfg	Release 7.4.1
Cisco-IOS-XR-um-tcp-cfg	Release 7.4.1
Cisco-IOS-XR-um-telnet-cfg	Release 7.4.1
Cisco-IOS-XR-um-tpa-cfg	Release 7.4.1
Cisco-IOS-XR-um-traps-bridgemib-cfg	Release 7.4.1
Cisco-IOS-XR-um-traps-config-copy-cfg	Release 7.4.1
Cisco-IOS-XR-um-traps-entity-cfg	Release 7.4.1
Cisco-IOS-XR-um-traps-entity-redundancy-cfg	Release 7.4.1
Cisco-IOS-XR-um-traps-entity-state-cfg	Release 7.4.1
Cisco-IOS-XR-um-traps-flash-cfg	Release 7.4.1
Cisco-IOS-XR-um-traps-fru-ctrl-cfg	Release 7.4.1
Cisco-IOS-XR-um-traps-ipsec-cfg	Release 7.4.1
Cisco-IOS-XR-um-traps-l2tun-cfg	Release 7.4.1
Cisco-IOS-XR-um-traps-otn-cfg	Release 7.4.1
Cisco-IOS-XR-um-traps-power-cfg	Release 7.4.1
Cisco-IOS-XR-um-traps-selective-vrf-download-cfg	Release 7.4.1

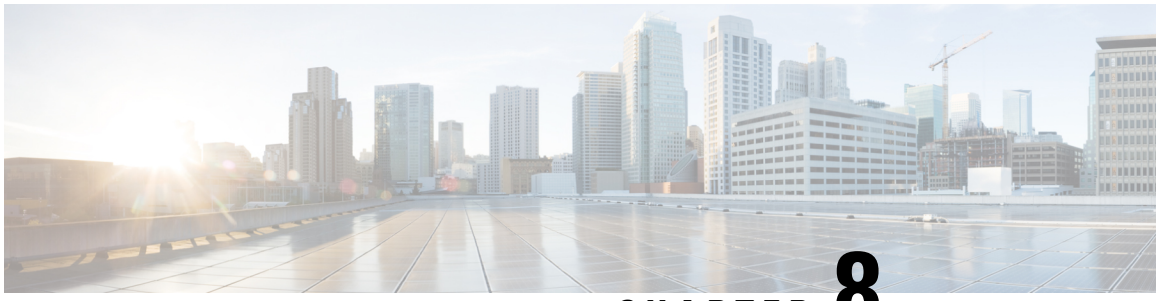
Unified Models	Introduced in Release
Cisco-IOS-XR-um-traps-syslog-cfg	Release 7.4.1
Cisco-IOS-XR-um-traps-system-cfg	Release 7.4.1
Cisco-IOS-XR-um-udp-cfg	Release 7.4.1
Cisco-IOS-XR-um-vty-pool-cfg	Release 7.4.1
Cisco-IOS-XR-um-xml-agent-cfg	Release 7.4.1
Cisco-IOS-XR-um-conflict-policy-cfg	Release 7.3.1
Cisco-IOS-XR-um-flow-cfg	Release 7.2.1
Cisco-IOS-XR-um-if-access-group-cfg	Release 7.2.1
Cisco-IOS-XR-um-if-ipv4-cfg	Release 7.2.1
Cisco-IOS-XR-um-if-ipv6-cfg	Release 7.2.1
Cisco-IOS-XR-um-if-service-policy-qos-cfg	Release 7.2.1
Cisco-IOS-XR-um-ipv4-access-list-cfg	Release 7.2.1
Cisco-IOS-XR-um-ipv6-access-list-cfg	Release 7.2.1
Cisco-IOS-XR-um-l2-ethernet-cfg	Release 7.2.1
Cisco-IOS-XR-um-multicast-routing-cfg	Release 7.2.1
Cisco-IOS-XR-um-object-group-cfg	Release 7.2.1
Cisco-IOS-XR-um-policymap-classmap-cfg	Release 7.2.1
Cisco-IOS-XR-um-router-igmp-cfg	Release 7.2.1
Cisco-IOS-XR-um-router-pim-cfg	Release 7.2.1
Cisco-IOS-XR-um-statistics-cfg	Release 7.2.1
Cisco-IOS-XR-um-ethernet-services-access-list-cfg	Release 7.2.1
Cisco-IOS-XR-um-if-l2transport-cfg	Release 7.2.1
Cisco-IOS-XR-um-ipv4-prefix-list-cfg	Release 7.2.1
Cisco-IOS-XR-um-ipv6-prefix-list-cfg	Release 7.2.1
Cisco-IOS-XR-um-router-amt-cfg	Release 7.2.1
Cisco-IOS-XR-um-router-mld-cfg	Release 7.2.1
Cisco-IOS-XR-um-router-msdp-cfg	Release 7.2.1
Cisco-IOS-XR-um-router-bgp-cfg	Release 7.1.1

Unified Models	Introduced in Release
Cisco-IOS-XR-um-mpls-te-cfg	Release 7.1.1
Cisco-IOS-XR-um-router-isis-cfg	Release 7.1.1
Cisco-IOS-XR-um-router-ospf-cfg	Release 7.1.1
Cisco-IOS-XR-um-router-ospfv3-cfg	Release 7.1.1
Cisco-IOS-XR-um-grpc-cfg	Release 7.0.1
Cisco-IOS-XR-um-if-bundle-cfg	Release 7.0.1
Cisco-IOS-XR-um-if-ethernet-cfg	Release 7.0.1
Cisco-IOS-XR-um-if-ip-address-cfg	Release 7.0.1
Cisco-IOS-XR-um-if-vrf-cfg	Release 7.0.1
Cisco-IOS-XR-um-interface-cfg	Release 7.0.1
Cisco-IOS-XR-um-mpls-l3vpn-cfg	Release 7.0.1
Cisco-IOS-XR-um-netconf-yang-cfg	Release 7.0.1
Cisco-IOS-XR-um-router-rib-cfg	Release 7.0.1
Cisco-IOS-XR-um-router-static-cfg	Release 7.0.1
Cisco-IOS-XR-um-snmp-server-cfg	Release 7.0.1
Cisco-IOS-XR-um-telemetry-model-driven-cfg	Release 7.0.1
Cisco-IOS-XR-um-vrf-cfg	Release 7.0.1
Cisco-IOS-XR-um-arp-cfg	Release 7.0.1
Cisco-IOS-XR-um-if-arp-cfg	Release 7.0.1
Cisco-IOS-XR-um-if-mpls-cfg	Release 7.0.1
Cisco-IOS-XR-um-if-tunnel-cfg	Release 7.0.1
Cisco-IOS-XR-um-mpls-ldp-cfg	Release 7.0.1
Cisco-IOS-XR-um-mpls-lsd-cfg	Release 7.0.1
Cisco-IOS-XR-um-rsvp-cfg	Release 7.0.1
Cisco-IOS-XR-um-traps-mpls-ldp-cfg	Release 7.0.1

PART II

Automation Scripts

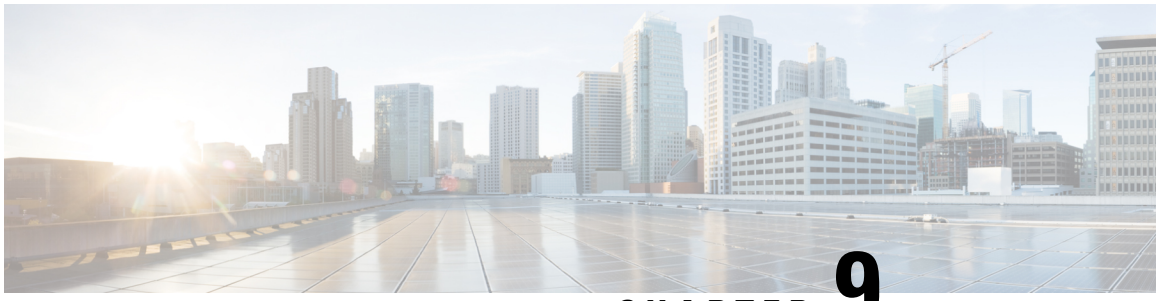
- New and Changed Feature Information, on page 97
- Achieve Network Operational Simplicity Using Automation Scripts, on page 99
- Config Scripts, on page 101
- Exec Scripts, on page 117
- Process Scripts, on page 135
- EEM Scripts, on page 149
- Model-Driven Command-Line Interface, on page 163
- Manage Automation Scripts Using YANG RPCs, on page 171
- Script Infrastructure and Sample Templates, on page 185
- Troubleshoot Automation Scripts, on page 207



CHAPTER 8

New and Changed Feature Information

This section lists all the new and changed features for the automation script features.



CHAPTER 9

Achieve Network Operational Simplicity Using Automation Scripts

Network automation is imperative to deploy and manage the networks with large-scale cloud-computing architectures. The automation can be achieved through standard model-driven data models. To cater to the automation requirements, you leverage the Cisco IOS XR infrastructure to make API calls and run scripts from an external controller. These off-box scripts take advantage of the exposed interfaces such as NETCONF, SNMP, SSH to work on the network element. However, there is need to maintain an external controller to interact with the router.

To simplify the operational infrastructure, the automation scripts can be run on the router, eliminating the need for an external controller. The execution of the different types of scripts are faster and reliable as it is not dependent on the speed or network reachability of the external controller. Most script types interact with IOS XR Software using standard protocols such as NETCONF. You can download script to the router, configure scripts, view operational data, and set responses to events in the router.

In summary, on-box scripting is similar to off-box scripting, with the exception that the management software that runs in an external controller is now part of the router software. The scripts programmatically automate configuration and operational tasks on the network devices. You can create customized scripts that are based on your network requirement and execute scripts on routers running Cisco IOS XR operating system. The packages that support scripting are provided in the software image.

Note You can create scripts using Python 3.5.

• Explore the Types of Automation Scripts, on page 99

Explore the Types of Automation Scripts

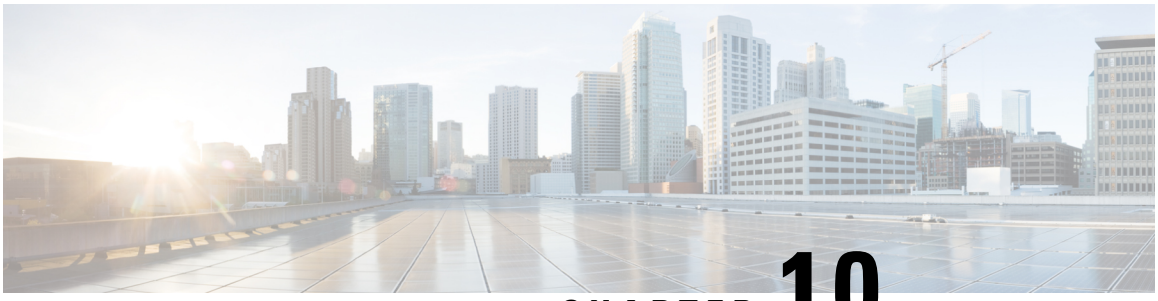
There are four types of on-box automation scripts that you can leverage to automate your network operations:

- Configuration (Config) scripts
- Execution (Exec) scripts
- Process scripts
- EEM scripts

The following table provides the scope and benefit of on-box scripts:

Table 15: On-Box Automation Scripts

	Config Scripts	Exec Scripts	Process Scripts	EEM Scripts
What is the scope of the script?	Enforce contextual and conditional changes to configurations, validate configurations before committing the changes to detect and notify potential errors. If configuration does not comply with the rules that are defined in the script, an action can be invoked. For example, generate a warning, syslog message, or halt a commit operation.	Run operational commands or RPCs, process the output, generate syslogs, configure system, perform system action commands such as system reload, process restarts, and collect logs for further evaluation.	Daemonize to continuously run as an agent on the router to execute additional checks outside traditional ZTP. Daemonized scripts are similar to exec scripts but run continuously. The script executes operational commands on the router and analyzes the output.	Run operational commands or RPCs, generate, and determine the next steps like logging the root cause or changing device configuration. Event policies can upload the output of event scripts to an on-box or off-box location for further analysis.
How to invoke the script?	All config scripts are processed automatically when **commit** command is executed on the router.	Exec script is invoked manually via CLI command or RPC.	Process script is activated via configuration CLI command.	Event scripts are invoked by defined event policies in response to a system event and allow for immediate action to take effect.
What are the main benefits of using the script?	Simplifies complex configurations and averts potential errors before a configuration is committed. Ensures that the network configuration complies with rules and policies that are defined in the script.	Collects operational information, and decreases the time that is involved in troubleshooting issues. Provides flexibility in changing the input parameters for every script run. This fosters dynamic automation of operational information.	Runs scripts as a daemon to continuously perform tasks that are not transient.	Automates log collection upon detecting error conditions that are defined by event policies. Uploads the output of event scripts to an on-box or off-box location for further analysis.



CHAPTER 10

Config Scripts

Cisco IOS XR config scripts can validate and make modifications to configuration changes. They allow device administrators to enforce custom configuration validation rules, or to simplify certain repetitive configuration tasks. These scripts are invoked automatically when you change a configuration and commit the changes. When a configuration commit is in progress, a config script inserts itself into the commit process. The config script can modify the current config candidate. For example, consider you want to maintain certain parameters for routers such as switched off ports or security policies. The config script is triggered to validate the updated configuration and take appropriate action. If the change is valid, the script allows committing the new configuration. If the configuration is invalid, or does not adhere to the enforced constraints, the script notifies you about the mismatch and blocks the commit operation. Overall, config scripts help to maintain crucial device parameters, and reduce human error in managing the network.

When you commit or validate a configuration change, the system invokes each of the active scripts to validate that change. Config scripts can perform the following actions:

- Analyze the proposed new configuration.
- If the configuration is invalid, block the commit by returning an error message along with the set of configuration items to which it relates.
- Return a warning message with the related details but does not block the commit operation.
- Modify the configuration to be included in the commit operation to make the configuration valid, or to simplify certain repetitive configuration tasks. For example, where a value needs duplicating between one configuration item and another configuration item.
- Generate system log messages for in-depth analysis of the configuration change. This log also helps in troubleshooting a failed commit operation.

Config Scripts Limitations

The following are the configuration and software restrictions when using config scripts:

- Config scripts cannot make modifications to configuration that is protected by CCV process, in particular:
  - Script checksum configuration.
  - Other sensitive security configuration such as AAA configuration.
- Config scripts do not explicitly support importing helper modules or other custom imports to provide shared functionality. Although such imports appear to function correctly when set up, they can potentially represent a security risk becaue there is no checksum validation on the imported modules. Modifications

to these imported modules are not automatically detected. To reflect changes to the imported module in the running scripts, you must manually unconfigure and reconfigure any scripts using the imported module.

Get Started with Config Scripts

Config scripts can be written in Python 3.5 programming language using the packages that Cisco supports. For more information about the supported packages

This chapter gets you started with provisioning your Python automation scripts on the router.

Note This chapter does not delve into creating Python scripts, but assumes that you have basic understanding of Python programming language. This section will walk you through the process involved in deploying and using the scripts on the router.

- Workflow to Run Config Scripts, on page 102
- Manage Scripts, on page 110
- Example: Validate and Activate an SSH Config Script, on page 112

Workflow to Run Config Scripts

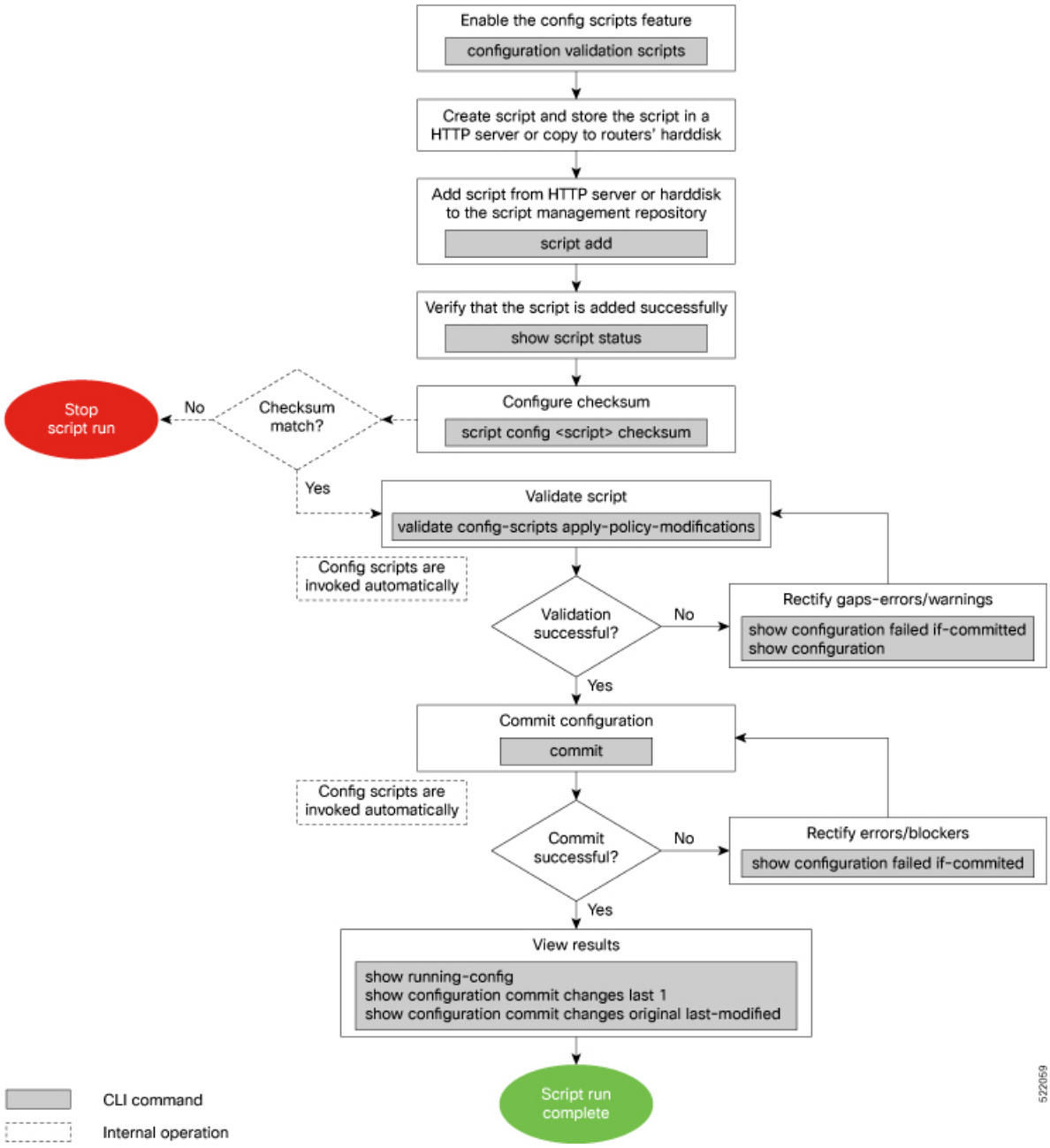
Complete the following tasks to provision config scripts:

- Enable the config scripts feature—Globally activate the config scripts feature on the router using **configuration validation scripts** command.
- Download the script—Store the config script on an HTTP server or copy to the harddisk of the router. Add the config script from the HTTP server to the script management repository (`hardisk:/mirror/script-mgmt`) on the router using the **script add config** command.
- Validate the script—Check script integrity and authenticity using the **script config** *script.py* **checksum** command. A script cannot be used unless the checksum is configured. After the checksum is configured, the script is active.

Note A config script is invoked automatically when you validate or commit a configuration change to modify the candidate configuration.

- Validate the configuration—Ensure that the configuration changes comply with the predefined conditions in the script and uncover potential errors using **validate config-scripts apply-policy-modifications** command.
- View the script execution details—Retrieve the operational data using the **show operational Config Global Validation Script Execution** command.

The following image shows a workflow diagram representing the steps involved in using a config script:



Enable Config Scripts Feature

Config scripts are driven by commit operations. To run the config scripts, you must enable the feature on the router. You must have root user privileges to enable the config scripts.

Note You must commit the configuration to enable the config scripts feature before committing any script checksum configuration.

Procedure

Step 1 Enable the config scripts.

Example:

```
Router(config)#configuration validation scripts
```

Step 2 Commit the configuration.

Example:

```
Router(config)#commit
```

Download the Script to the Router

To manage the scripts, you must add the scripts to the script management repository on the router. A subdirectory is created for each script type. By default, this repository stores the downloaded scripts in the appropriate subdirectory based on script type.

Script Type	Download Location
config	`harddisk:/mirror/script-mgmt/config`
exec	`harddisk:/mirror/script-mgmt/exec`
process	`harddisk:/mirror/script-mgmt/process`
eem	`harddisk:/mirror/script-mgmt/eem`

The scripts are added to the script management repository using two methods:

- **Method 1:** Add script from a server
- **Method 2:** Copy script from external repository to harddisk using **scp** or **copy** command

In this section, you learn how to add `config-script.py` script to the script management repository.

Procedure

Step 1 Add the script to the script management repository on the router using one of the two options:

- **Add Script From a Server**

  Add the script from a configured HTTP server or the harddisk location in the router.

  ```
  Router#script add config <script-location> <script.py>
  ```

  The following example shows a config script `config-script.py` downloaded from an external repository `http://192.0.2.0/scripts`:

```
Router#script add config http://192.0.2.0/scripts config-script.py
Fri Aug 20 05:03:40.791 UTC
config-script.py has been added to the script repository
```

You can add a maximum of 10 scripts simultaneously.

```
Router#script add config <script-location> <script1.py> <script2.py> ... <script10.py>
```

You can also specify the checksum value while downloading the script. This value ensures that the file being copied is genuine. You can fetch the checksum of the script from the server from where you are downloading the script. However, specifying checksum while downloading the script is optional.

```
Router#script add config http://192.0.2.0/scripts config-script.py checksum SHA256 <checksum-value>
```

For multiple scripts, use the following syntax to specify the checksum:

```
Router#script add config http://192.0.2.0/scripts <script1.py> <script1-checksum> <script2.py>
<script2-checksum>
... <script10.py> <script10-checksum>
```

If you specify the checksum for one script, you must specify the checksum for all the scripts that you download.

Note
Only SHA256 checksum is supported.

- **Copy the Script from an External Repository**

  You can copy the script from the external repository to the routers' harddisk and then add the script to the script management repository.

  a. Copy the script from a remote location to harddisk using scp or copy command.

  ```
  Router#scp userx@192.0.2.0:/scripts/config-script.py /harddisk:/
  ```

  b. Add the script from the harddisk to the script management repository.

  ```
  Router#script add config /harddisk:/ config-script.py
  Fri Aug 20 05:03:40.791 UTC
  config-script.py has been added to the script repository
  ```

Step 2 Verify that the scripts are downloaded to the script management repository on the router.

Example:

```
Router#show script status
Router#show script status
Wed Aug 25 23:10:50.453 UTC
=============================================================================================
 Name              | Type     | Status           | Last Action | Action Time
---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------
 config-script.py  | config   | Config Checksum  | NEW         | Tue Aug 24 10:18:23 2021
```

Script `config-script.py` is copied to `harddisk:/mirror/script-mgmt/config` directory on the router.

Configure Checksum for Config Script

Every script is associated with a checksum hash value. This value ensures the integrity of the script, and that the script is not tampered with. The checksum is a string of numbers and letters that act as a fingerprint for

script. The checksum of the script is compared with the configured checksum. If the values do not match, the script is not run and a syslog warning message is displayed.

It is mandatory to configure the checksum to run the script.

Note Config scripts support SHA256 checksum.

Before you begin

Ensure that the following prerequisites are met before you run the script:

1. Enable Config Scripts Feature, on page 103
2.

Procedure

Step 1 Retrieve the SHA256 checksum hash value for the script. Ideally this action would be performed on a trusted device, such as the system on which the script was created. This minimizes the possibility that the script is tampered with. However, if the router is secure, you can retrieve the checksum hash value from the IOS XR Linux bash shell.

Example:

```
Router#run
[node0_RP0_CPU0:~]$sha256sum /harddisk:/mirror/script-mgmt/config/config-script.py
94336f3997521d6e1aec0ee6faab0233562d53d4de7b0092e80b53caed58414b
/harddisk:/mirror/script-mgmt/config/config-script.py
```

Make note of the checksum value.

Step 2 View the status of the script.

Example:

```
Router#show script status detail
Fri Aug 20 05:04:13.539 UTC
=============================================================================================================

 Name                            | Type   | Status           | Last Action | Action Time
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

 config-script.py                | config | Config Checksum  | NEW         | Fri Aug 20 05:03:41 2021
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

 Script Name       : config-script.py
 History:
 --------
 1.   Action       : NEW
      Time         : Fri Aug 20 05:03:41 2021
      Description  : User action IN_CLOSE_WRITE
=============================================================================================
```

The `Status` shows that the checksum is not configured.

Step 3 Configure the checksum.

Example:

```
Router#configure
Router(config)#script config config-script.py checksum SHA256
94336f3997521d6e1aec0ee6faab0233562d53d4de7b0092e80b53caed58414b
Router(config)#commit
Tue Aug 24 10:23:10.546 UTC
Router(config)#end
```

Note

When you commit this configuration, the script is automatically run to validate the resulting running configuration. If the script returns any errors, this commit operation fails. This way, the running configuration always remains valid with respect to all currently active scripts with checksums configured.

If you are configuring multiple scripts, the system decides an appropriate order to run the scripts. However, you can control the order in which scripts execute using a priority value. For more information on configuring the priority value, see Control Priority When Running Multiple Scripts, on page 111.

Step 4 Verify the status of the script.

Example:

```
Router#show script status detail
Fri Aug 20 05:06:17.296 UTC
==========================================================================================

 Name                            | Type   | Status           | Last Action | Action Time
------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

 config-script.py                | config | Ready            | NEW         | Fri Aug 20 05:03:41 2021
------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

 Script Name       : config-script.py
 Checksum          : 94336f3997521d6e1aec0ee6faab0233562d53d4de7b0092e80b53caed58414b
 History:
 --------
 1.   Action       : NEW
      Time         : Fri Aug 20 05:03:41 2021
      Checksum     : 94336f3997521d6e1aec0ee6faab0233562d53d4de7b0092e80b53caed58414b
      Description  : User action IN_CLOSE_WRITE
==========================================================================================
```

The status `Ready` indicates that the checksum is configured and the script is ready to be run. When the script is run, the checksum value is recalculated to check if it matches with the configured hash value. If the values differ, the script is not run, and the commit operation that triggered the script is rejected. It is mandatory for the checksum values to match for the script to run.

Validate or Commit Configuration to Invoke Config Script

Table 16: Feature History Table

Feature Name	Release Information	Description
Validate Pre-configuration Using Config Scripts	Release 7.5.1	This feature allows you to use config scripts to validate pre-configuration during a commit or validate operation. Any active config scripts can read and validate (accept, reject or modify) pre-configuration. The pre-configuration is only applied to the system later on, when the relevant hardware is inserted, and does not require further script validation at that point. Previously, config scripts did not allow validating configuration until the corresponding hardware was present.

You can validate a configuration change on the set of active config scripts (including any scripts newly activated as part of the configuration change) before committing the changes. This validation ensures that the configuration complies with predefined conditions defined in the active scripts based on your network requirements. With validation, you can update the target configuration buffer with any modifications that are made by the config scripts. You can review the target configuration using the **show configuration** command, and further refine the changes to resolve any outstanding errors before revalidating or committing the configuration.

Note If the config script rejects one or more items in the commit operation, the entire commit operation is rejected.

You can also validate pre-configuration during a commit operation. Pre-configuration is any configuration specific to a particular hardware resource such as an interface or a line card that is committed before that resource is present. For example, commit configuration for a line card before it is inserted into the chassis. Any active config scripts can read and validate (accept, reject or modify) the pre-configuration. However, when the configuration is committed, the pre-configuration is not applied to the system. Later, when the relevant hardware resource is available, the pre-configuration becomes active and is applied to the system. The config scripts are not run to validate the configuration at this point as the scripts have already validated this configuration.

Before you begin

Ensure that the following prerequisites are met before you run the script:

1. Enable Config Scripts Feature, on page 103
2. Configure Checksum for Config Script, on page 105

Procedure

Step 1 Validate the configuration with the conditions in the config script.

Example:

```
Router(config)#validate config-scripts apply-policy-modifications
Tue Aug 31 08:30:38.613 UTC

% Policy modifications were made to target configuration, please issue 'show configuration'
from this session to view the resulting configuration
                            figuration' from this session to view the resulting configuration
```

The output shows that there are no errors in the changed configuration. You can view the modifications made to the target configuration.

Note
If you do not want the config buffer to be updated with the modifications, omit the **apply-policy-modifications** keyword in the command.

The script validates the configuration changes with the conditions set in the script. Based on the configuration, the script stops the commit operation, or modifies the configuration.

Step 2 View the modified target configuration.

Example:

```
Router(config)#show configuration
Tue Aug 31 08:30:56.833 UTC
Building configuration...
!! IOS XR Configuration 7.3.2
script config config-script.py checksum SHA256
94336f3997521d6e1aec0ee6faab0233562d53d4de7b0092e80b53caed58414b
                                          d342adb35cbc8a0cd4b6ea1063d0eda2d58
......----- configuration details
end
```

Step 3 Commit the configuration.

Example:

```
Router(config)#commit
Tue Aug 31 08:31:32.926 UTC
```

If the script returns an error, use the **show configuration failed if-committed** command to view the errors. If there are no validation errors, the commit operation is successful including any modifications that are made by config scripts.

You can view the recent commit operation that the script modified, and display the original configuration changes before the script modified the values using **show configuration commit changes original last-modified** command.

If the commit operation is successful, you can check what changes were committed including the script modifications using **show configuration commit changes last 1** command.

Note
If a config script returns a modified value that is syntactically invalid, such as an integer that is out of range, then the configuration is not converted to CLI format for use in operational commands. This action impacts the **validate config-scripts apply-policy-modifications** command and **show configuration** command to view the modifications, and **show configuration failed [if-committed]** command during a failed commit operation.

Step 4 After the configuration change is successful, view the running configuration and logs for details.

Example:

```
Router(config)#show logging
Tue Aug 31 08:31:54.472 UTC
Syslog logging: enabled (0 messages dropped, 0 flushes, 0 overruns)
    Console logging: Disabled
    Monitor logging: level debugging, 0 messages logged
    Trap logging: level informational, 0 messages logged
    Buffer logging: level debugging, 13 messages logged

Log Buffer (2097152 bytes):
-------------------- snipped for brevity ----------------------------------
Configuration committed by user 'cisco'. Use 'show configuration commit changes
1000000006' to view the changes.
```

Manage Scripts

This section shows the additional operations that you can perform on a script.

Delete Config Script from the Router

You can delete a config script from the script management repository using the **script remove** command.

Procedure

Step 1 View the active scripts on the router.

Example:

```
Router#show script status
Wed Aug 24 10:10:50.453 UTC
=============================================================================================================

 Name                            | Type   | Status           | Last Action | Action Time
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

 ssh_config_script.py            | config | Ready            | NEW         | Tue Aug 24 09:18:23 2021

 =============================================================================================================
```

Ensure the script that you want to delete is present in the repository.

Alternatively you can also view the list of scripts from the IOS XR Linux bash shell.

```
[node0_RP0_CPU0:/harddisk:/mirror/script-mgmt/config]$ls -lrt
total 1
-rw-rw-rw-. 1 root root 110 Aug 24 10:44 ssh_config_script.py
```

Step 2 Delete script `ssh_config_script.py`.

Example:

```
Router#script remove config ssh_config_script.py
Tue Aug 24 10:19:38.170 UTC
ssh_config_script.py has been deleted from the script repository
```

You can also delete multiple scripts simultaneously.

```
Router#script remove config sample1.py sample2.py sample3.py
```

Step 3 Verify that the script is deleted from the subdirectory.

Example:

```
Router#show script status
Tue Aug 24 10:24:38.170 UTC
### No scripts found ###
```

The script is deleted from the script management repository.

If a config script is still configured when it is removed, subsequent commit operations are rejected. So, you must also undo the configuration of the script:

```
Router(config)#no script config ssh_config_script.py
Router(config)#commit
```

Control Priority When Running Multiple Scripts

If the set of active scripts includes two (or more) that may attempt to modify the same configuration item but to different values, whichever script runs last takes precedence. The script that was last run supersedes the values written by the script (or scripts) that ran before it. It is recommended to avoid such dependencies between scripts. For example, you can combine such scripts into a single script. If the dependency cannot be resolved, you can specify which script takes precedence by ensuring it runs last.

Priority can also be used to ensure scripts run in an optimal order, which may be important if scripts consume resources and impacts performance. For example, consider that script A sets configuration that is validated by script B. Without a set priority, the system may run script B first, then script A, and then script B a second time to validate the changes made by script A. With a configured priority, the system ensures that script A runs first, and script B needs to run only once.

The priority value is an integer between 0-4294967295. The default value is 500.

Consider script `sample1.py` depends on `sample2.py` to validate the configuration that the script sets. The script `sample1.py` must be run first, followed by `sample2.py`. Configure the priority to ensure that the system runs the scripts in a specified order.

Procedure

Step 1 Configure script `sample1.py` with a lower priority.

Example:

```
Router(config)#script config sample1.py checksum sha256
2b061f11ede3c1c0c18f1ee97269fd342adb35cbc8a0cd4b6ea1063d0eda2d58
priority 10
```

Step 2 Configure script `sample2.py` with a higher priority.

Example:

```
Router(config)#script config sample2.py checksum sha256
2fa34b64542f005ed58dcaa1f3560e92a03855223e130535978f8c35bc21290c
priority 20
```

Step 3 Commit the configuration.

Example:

```
Router(config)#commit
```

The system checks the priority values, and runs the one with lower priority first (`sample1.py`), followed by the one with the higher priority value (`sample2.py`).

Example: Validate and Activate an SSH Config Script

This section presents examples for config script that enforces various constraints related to SSH configuration, including making modifications to the configuration in some cases. The following sub-sections illustrate the behaviour of this script in various scenarios.

Before you begin

Ensure you have completed the following prerequisites before you validate the script:

1. Enable config scripts feature on the router. See Enable Config Scripts Feature, on page 103.
2. Create a config script `ssh_config_script.py`. Store the script on an HTTP server or copy the script to the harddisk of the router.

```
import cisco.config_validation as xr
from cisco.script_mgmt import xrlog
syslog = xrlog.getSysLogger('xr_cli_config')

def check_ssh_late_cb(root):
    SSH = "/crypto-ssh-cfg:ssh"
    SERVER = "/crypto-ssh-cfg:ssh/server"
    SESSION_LIMIT = "session-limit"
    LOGGING = "logging"
    RATE_LIMIT = "rate-limit"
    V2 = "v2"
    server = root.get_node(SERVER)
    if server is None:
        xr.add_error(SSH, "SSH must be enabled.")

    if server :
        session_limit = server.get_node(SESSION_LIMIT)
        rate_limit = server.get_node(RATE_LIMIT)
        ssh_logging = server.get_node(LOGGING)
        ssh_v2 = server.get_node(V2)

        if session_limit is None or session_limit.value >= 100:
            server.set_node(SESSION_LIMIT, 80)
        if rate_limit.value == 60:
            xr.add_warning(rate_limit, "RATE_LIMIT should not be set to default value")

        if not ssh_logging:
            server.set_node(LOGGING)
        if not ssh_v2:
```

```
                xr.add_error(server, "Server V2 need to be set")

xr.register_validate_callback(["/crypto-ssh-cfg:ssh/server/*"], check_ssh_late_cb)
```

The script checks the following actions:

- Check if SSH is enabled. If not, generate an error message `SSH must be enabled` and stop the commit operation.
- Check if the rate-limit is set to 60, display a warning message that the `RATE_LIMIT should not be set to default value` and allow the commit operation.
- Check if the session-limit is set. If the limit is 100 sessions or more, set the value to 80 and allow the commit operation.
- Set the logging if not already enabled.

3. Add the script from HTTP server or harddisk to the script management repository.

Scenario 1: Validate the Script Without SSH Configuration

In this example, you validate a script without SSH configuration. The script is programmed to check the SSH configuration. If not configured, the script instructs the system to display an error message and stop the commit operation until SSH is configured.

Procedure

Step 1 Configure the checksum to verify the authenticity and integrity of the script. See Configure Checksum for Config Script, on page 105.

Step 2 Validate the config script.

Example:

```
Router(config)#validate config-scripts apply-policy-modifications
Wed Sep 1 23:21:34.730 UTC

% Validation of configuration items failed. Please issue 'show configuration failed if-committed'
from this
session to view the errors
```

The validation of the configuration failed.

Step 3 View the configuration of the failed operation.

Example:

```
Router#show configuration failed if-committed
Wed Sep 1 22:01:07.492 UTC
!! SEMANTIC ERRORS: This configuration was rejected by !! the system due to semantic errors.
!! The individual errors with each failed configuration command can be found below.

script config ssh_config_script.py checksum SHA256
2b061f11ede3c1c0c18f1ee97269fd342adb35cbc8a0cd4b6ea1063d0eda2d58
!!% ERROR: SSH must be enabled.
end
```

The message for the failure is displayed. Here, the error `SSH must be enabled` is displayed as programmed in the script. The script stops the commit operation because the changes do not comply with the rule set in the script.

Step 4 Check the syslog output for the count of errors, warnings, and modifications.

Example:

```
Router#show logging  | in Error
Wed Sep 1 22:02:05.559 UTC
Router:Wed Sep 1 22:45:05.559 UTC: ccv[394]: %MGBL-CCV-6-CONFIG_SCRIPT_CALLBACK_EXECUTED :
The function check_ssh_late_cb registered by the config script ssh_config_script.py was
executed in 0.000 seconds.
Error/Warning/Modification counts: 1/0/0
```

In this example, the script displays an error about the missing SSH configuration. When an error is displayed, the warning and modification count always show 0/0 respectively even if modifications exist on the target buffer.

Scenario 2: Configure SSH and Validate the Script

In this example, you configure SSH to resolve the error displayed in scenario 1, and validate the script again.

Procedure

Step 1 Configure SSH.

Example:

```
Router(config)#ssh server v2
Router(config)#ssh server vrf default
Router(config)#ssh server netconf vrf default
```

Step 2 Configure the checksum.

Step 3 Validate the configuration again.

Example:

```
Router(config)#validate config-scripts apply-policy-modifications
Wed Sep 1 22:03:05.448 UTC

% Policy modifications were made to target configuration, please issue 'show configuration'
from this session to view the resulting configuration
```

The script is programmed to display an error and stop the commit operation if the system detects that SSH server is not configured. After the SSH server is configured, the script is validated successfully.

Step 4 Commit the configuration.

Example:

```
Router(config)#commit
Tue Aug 31 08:31:32.926 UTC
```

Step 5 View the SSH configuration that is applied or modified after the commit operation.

Example:

```
Router#show running-config ssh
Wed Sep 1 22:15:05.448 UTC
ssh server logging
ssh server session-limit 80
ssh server v2
ssh server vrf default
ssh server netconf vrf default
```

In addition, you see the modifications that are made by the script to the target buffer. The session-limit is used to configure the number of allowable concurrent incoming SSH sessions. In this example, the default limit is set to 80 sessions. Outgoing connections are not part of the limit. The script is programmed to check the session limit. If the limit is greater or equal to 100 sessions, the script reconfigures the value to the default 80 sessions. However, if the limit is within 100 sessions, the configuration is accepted without modification.

Step 6 Check the syslog output for the count of errors, warnings, and modifications.

Example:

```
Router#show logging  | in Error
Wed Sep 1 22:45:05.559 UTC
Router:Wed Sep 1 22:45:05.559 UTC: ccv[394]: %MGBL-CCV-6-CONFIG_SCRIPT_CALLBACK_EXECUTED :
The function check_ssh_late_cb registered by the config script ssh_config_script.py was
executed in 0.000 seconds.
Error/Warning/Modification counts: 0/0/2
```

In this example, the script did not display an error or warning, but made two modifications for server logging and session-limit.

Scenario 3: Set Rate-limit Value to Default Value in the Script

In this example, you see the response after setting the rate-limit to the default value configured in the script. The rate-limit is used to limit the incoming SSH connection requests to the configured rate. The SSH server rejects any connection request beyond the rate-limit. Changing the rate-limit does not affect established SSH sessions. For example, if the rate-limit argument is set to 60, then 60 requests are allowed per minute. The script checks if the rate-limit is set to the default value 60. If yes, the script displays a warning message that the `RATE_LIMIT should not be set to default value`, but allow the commit operation.

Procedure

Step 1 Configure rate-limit to the default value of 60.

Example:

```
Router(config)#ssh server rate-limit 60
```

Step 2 Commit the configuration.

Example:

```
Router(config)#commit
Wed Sep 1 22:11:05.448 UTC

% Validation warnings detected as a result of the commit operation.
Please issue 'show configuration warnings' to view the warnings
```

The script displays a warning message but proceeds with the commit operation.

Step 3 View the warning message.

Example:

```
Router(config)#show configuration warnings
Wed Sep 1 22:12:05.448 UTC
!! SEMANTIC ERRORS: This configuration was rejected by the system due to
semantic errors. The individual errors with each failed configuration command
can be found below.
```

```
script config ssh_config_script.py checksum SHA256
2b061f11ede3c1c0c18f1ee97269fd342adb35cbc8a0cd4b6ea1063d0eda2d58
!!% WARNING: RATE_LIMIT should not be set to default value
end
```

The rate limit is default value of 60. The script is programmed to display a warning message if the rate limit is set to the default value. You can either change the limit or leave the value as is.

Step 4 View the running configuration.

Example:

```
Router(config)#do show running-config  script
Wed Sep 1 22:15:05.448 UTC
script config ssh_config_script.py checksum SHA256
2b061f11ede3c1c0c18f1ee97269fd342adb35cbc8a0cd4b6ea1063d0eda2d58
```

The script `ssh_config_script.py` is active.

Scenario 4: Delete SSH Server Configuration

In this example, you delete the SSH server configurations, and see the response when the script is validated.

Procedure

Step 1 Remove the SSH server configuration.

Example:

```
Router(config)#no ssh server v2
```

Step 2 Commit the configuration.

Example:

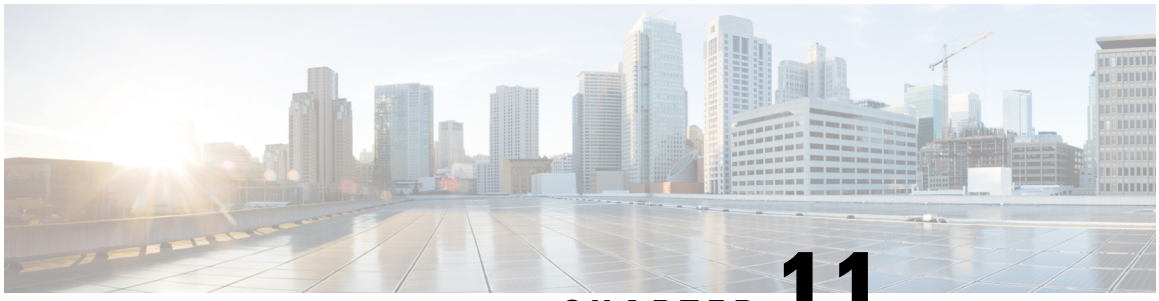
```
Router(config)#commit
Wed Sep 1 22:45:05.559 UTC

% Failed to commit one or more configuration items during an atomic operation.
No changes have been made. Please issue 'show configuration failed if-committed' from
this session to view the errors
```

Step 3 View the error message.

Example:

```
Router(config)#show configuration failed if-committed
Wed Sep 1 22:47:53.202 UTC
!! SEMANTIC ERRORS: This configuration was rejected by the system due to semantic errors. The individual
errors with each failed configuration command can be found below.

no ssh server v2
!!% ERROR: Server V2 need to be set
end
```

The message is displayed based on the rule set in the script.



CHAPTER 11

Exec Scripts

Cisco IOS XR exec scripts are on-box scripts that automate configurations of devices in the network. The exec scripts are written in Python using the Python libraries that Cisco provides with the base package. For the list of supported packages

A script management repository on the router manages the exec scripts. This repository is replicated on both RPs.

In IOS XR, AAA authorization controls the user access and privileges to perform operations. To run the exec script, you must have root user permissions.

Exec scripts provide the following advantages:

- Provides automation capabilities to simplify complex operations.
- Create customized operations based on the requirement.
- Provide flexibility in changing the input parameters for every script run. This fosters dynamic automation of operational information.
- Detect and display errors and warnings when executing an operation.
- Run multiple automated operations in parallel without blocking the console.

This chapter gets you started with provisioning your Python automation scripts on the router.

Note This chapter does not delve into creating Python scripts, but assumes that you have basic understanding of Python programming language. This section will walk you through the process involved in deploying and using the scripts on the router.

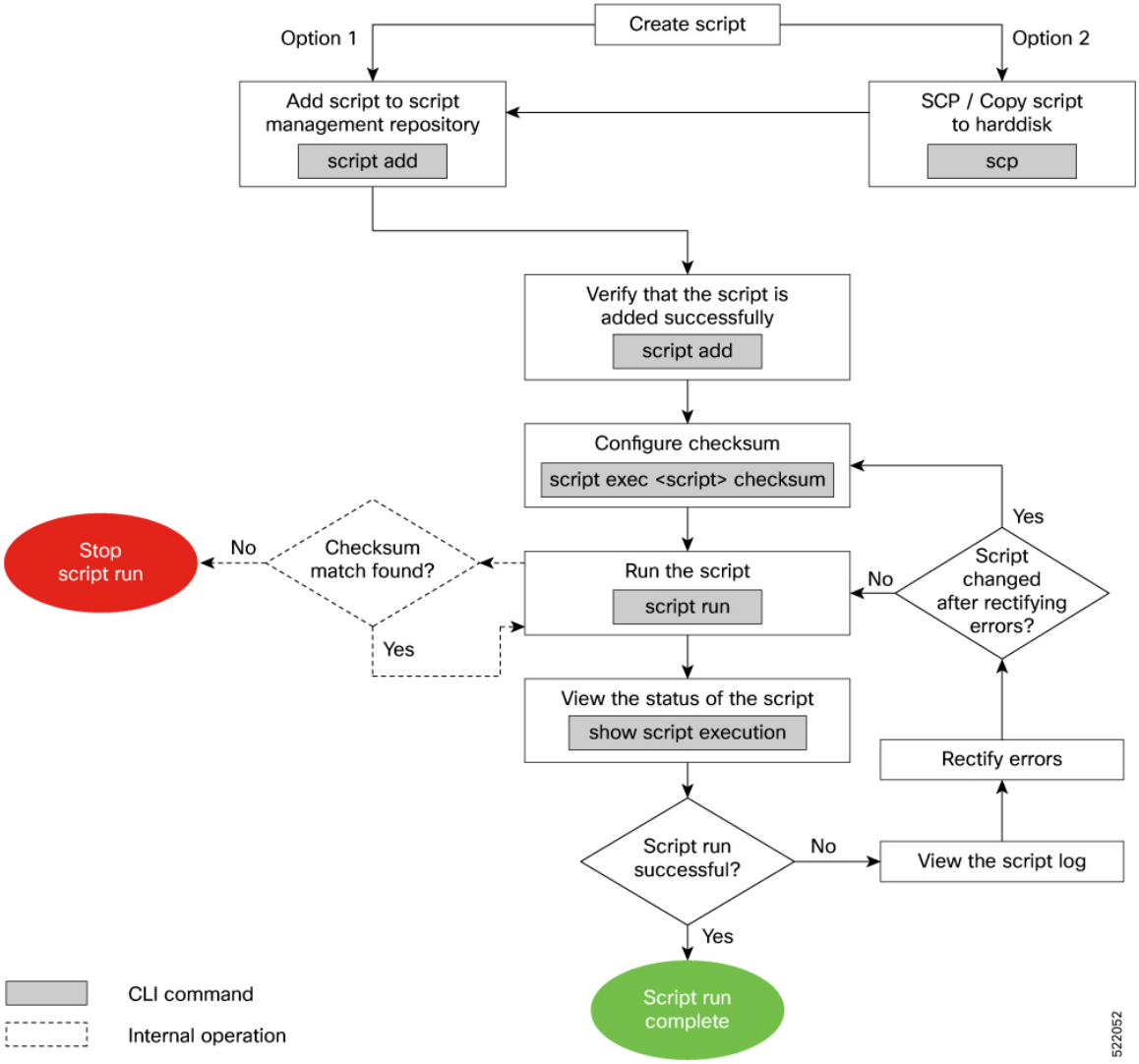
- Workflow to Run an Exec Script, on page 117
- Manage Scripts, on page 128
- Example: Exec Script to Verify Bundle Interfaces, on page 129

Workflow to Run an Exec Script

Complete the following tasks to provision exec scripts:

- Download the script—Add the script to the appropriate exec script directory on the router. using the **script add exec** command.
- Configure checksum—Check script integrity and authenticity using the **script exec <script.py> checksum** command.
- Run the script—Trigger changes to the router configuration. Include arguments, set the maximum time for the script to run, setup log levels using the **script run** command.
- View the script execution details—Validate the script and retrieve the operational data using the **show script execution** command.

The following image shows a workflow diagram representing the steps involved in using an exec script:



Download the Script to the Router

To manage the scripts, you must add the scripts to the script management repository on the router. A subdirectory is created for each script type. By default, this repository stores the downloaded scripts in the appropriate subdirectory based on script type.

Script Type	Download Location
config	`harddisk:/mirror/script-mgmt/config`
exec	`harddisk:/mirror/script-mgmt/exec`
process	`harddisk:/mirror/script-mgmt/process`
eem	`harddisk:/mirror/script-mgmt/eem`

The scripts are added to the script management repository using two methods:

- **Method 1:** Add script from a server
- **Method 2:** Copy script from external repository to harddisk using **scp** or **copy** command

In this section, you learn how to add `exec-script.py` script to the script management repository.

Procedure

Step 1 Add the script to the script management repository on the router using one of the two options:

- **Add Script From a Server**

  Add the script from a configured HTTP server or the harddisk location in the router.

  ```
  Router#script add exec <script-location> <script.py>
  ```

  The following example shows a config script `exec-script.py` downloaded from an external repository `http://192.0.2.0/scripts`:

  ```
  Router#script add config http://192.0.2.0/scripts exec-script.py
  Fri Aug 20 05:03:40.791 UTC
  exec-script.py has been added to the script repository
  ```

  Note
  The repository can be local to the router, or accessed remotely through TFTP, SCP, FTP, HTTP, or HTTPS protocols. In addition to the default Virtual Routing and Forwarding (VRF), support is also extended for non-default VRF.

  You can add a maximum of 10 scripts simultaneously.

  ```
  Router#script add exec <script-location> <script1.py> <script2.py> ... <script10.py>
  ```

  You can also specify the checksum value while downloading the script. This value ensures that the file being copied is genuine. You can fetch the checksum of the script from the server from where you are downloading the script. However, specifying checksum while downloading the script is optional.

  Note
  Only SHA256 checksum is supported.

  ```
  Router#script add exec http://192.0.2.0/scripts exec-script.py checksum SHA256 <checksum-value>
  ```

For multiple scripts, use the following syntax to specify the checksum:

```
Router#script add exec http://192.0.2.0/scripts <script1.py> <script1-checksum> <script2.py>
<script2-checksum>
... <script10.py> <script10-checksum>
```

If you specify the checksum for one script, you must specify the checksum for all the scripts that you download.

- **Copy the Script from an External Repository**

  You can copy the script from the external repository to the routers' harddisk and then add the script to the script management repository.

  a. Copy the script from a remote location to harddisk using scp or copy command.

  ```
  Router#scp userx@192.0.2.0:/scripts/exec-script.py /harddisk:/
  ```

  b. Add the script from the harddisk to the script management repository.

  ```
  Router#script add exec /harddisk:/ exec-script.py
  Fri Aug 20 05:03:40.791 UTC
  exec-script.py has been added to the script repository
  ```

Step 2 Verify that the scripts are downloaded to the script management repository on the router.

Example:

```
Router#show script status
Wed Aug 25 23:10:50.453 UTC
=============================================================================================
 Name               | Type     | Status           | Last Action | Action Time
---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------
 exec-script.py     | exec     | Config Checksum  | NEW         | Tue Aug 24 10:18:23 2021
 =============================================================================================
```

Script `exec-script.py` is copied to `harddisk:/mirror/script-mgmt/exec` directory on the router.

Update Scripts from a Remote Server

Table 17: Feature History Table

Feature Name	Release Information	Description
Update Automation Scripts from Remote Server	Release 7.5.1	This feature lets you update automation scripts across routers by accessing the master script from a remote site. This eases script management, where you make changes to the master script and then copy it to routers where it is deployed. This feature introduces the **auto-update** keyword in the **script exec** command.

You can maintain the latest copy of the scripts in a remote location, and configure the routers to automatically update the local copy with the latest copy on the server as required.

Procedure

You can update the script using one of the following options.

- **Config CLI commands:**

  a. Update the script on the router with the version on the remote server.

  ```
  Router(config)#script exec auto-update sample3.py http://10.23.255.205
  condition [manual | on-run | schedule]
  ```

  In this example, `sample3.py` script is automatically updated from the remote server at `http://10.23.255.205`. You can set conditions when updating the script.

  The repository can be accessed remotely through FTP, HTTP, HTTPS, TFTP or SCP protocols.

Condition	Description
manual	Update manually with an Exec CLI (default). The following option is supported: • vrf—Specify the non-default Virtual Routing and Forwarding (VRF) name. • username—Enter the username. • password—Enter the password.
on-run	Update the exec script during run time. The following options are supported: • on-fail—Specify one of the actions on failure. • do-not-run—Do not run the script on failure. • run-local—Run the local copy of the script. • vrf—Specify the non-default VRF name. • username—Enter the username. • password—Enter the password. **Note** Only the exec scripts support the **on-run** option.

Condition	Description
schedule	Update automatically at specified time intervals. The following option is supported: • <60-262800>—Update interval in minutes • username—Enter the username. • password—Enter the password. **Note** The **schedule** option does not support SCP protocol.

Note
Do not specify the username and password inside the URL of the remote server.

b. Commit the configuration.

```
Router(config)#commit
```

c. Run the script.

```
Router#script run sample3.py background
Tue Nov 16 12:50:33.512 UTC
sample3.py has been added to the script repository
Script run scheduled: sample3.py. Request ID: 1624990452
```

You can specify additional options to the command:

- **arguments:** Script command-line arguments. The format is strings in single quotes. Escape double quotes inside string arguments.
- **description:** Description of script run.
- **log-level:** Script logging level. Default is INFO.
- **log-path:** Location to store script logs.
- **max-runtime:** Maximum run time of script.

- **Exec CLI commands:**

When you run the script, the script is downloaded and the checksum is automatically configured on the router.

- If **on-run** option is configured, running the **script run** command downloads the script.
- If **manual** option is configured, then you must run **script update** Exec command.
- If **schedule** option is selected, then the script is automatically updated after the specified interval.

a. Update the script on the router with the version on the remote server.

```
Router#script update manual exec sample2.py
Tue Nov 16 12:20:23.058 UTC
sample2.py has been added to the script repository
```

You can set options when updating the script:

Option	Description
WORD	Script name.
all	Update all scripts in config.

Invoke Scripts from a Remote Server

You can directly run the script using the URL to the remote server and provide the checksum value. The checksum is a mandatory parameter. The format of the URL is `[protocol]://[user:password@]server[:port]/directory/file_name`.

Procedure

Run the script from the remote server.

Example:

```
Router#script run http://10.23.255.205/sample1.py checksum
5103a843032505decc37ff21089336e4bcc6a1061341056ca8add3ac5d6620ef background
Tue Nov 16 12:12:08.614 UTC
Script run scheduled: sample1.py. Request ID: 1624990451
```

The repository can be accessed remotely through FTP, HTTP, HTTPS, TFTP or SCP protocols.

You can specify additional options to the command:

- **arguments:** Script command-line arguments. The format is strings in single quotes. Escape double quotes inside string arguments.
- **description:** Description of script run.
- **log-level:** Script logging level. Default is INFO.
- **log-path:** Location to store script logs.
- **max-runtime:** Maximum run time of script.
- **vrf:** Specify the VRF for the network file system.

Configure Checksum for Exec Script

Every script is associated with a checksum value. The checksum ensures the integrity of the script that is downloaded from the server or external repository is intact, and that the script is not tampered. The checksum is a string of numbers and letters that act as a fingerprint for script. The checksum of the script is compared with the configured checksum. If the values do not match, the script is not run and a syslog warning message is displayed.

It is mandatory to configure the checksum to run the script.

Note Exec scripts support SHA256 checksum.

Before you begin

Ensure that the script is added to the script management repository. See Download the Script to the Router, on page 119.

Procedure

Step 1 Retrieve the SHA256 checksum hash value for the script. Ideally this action would be performed on a trusted device, such as the system on which the script was created. This minimizes the possibility that the script is tampered with.

Example:

```
Server$sha256sum sample1.py
94336f3997521d6e1aec0ee6faab0233562d53d4de7b0092e80b53caed58414b sample1.py
```

Make note of the checksum value.

Step 2 View the status of the script.

Example:

```
Router#show script status detail
Fri Aug 20 05:04:13.539 UTC
=============================================================================================================

 Name                            | Type    | Status            | Last Action | Action Time
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

 sample1.py                      | exec    | Config Checksum   | NEW         | Fri Aug 20 05:03:41 2021
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

 Script Name       : sample1.py
 History:
 --------
 1.   Action       : NEW
      Time         : Fri Aug 20 05:03:41 2021
      Description  : User action IN_CLOSE_WRITE
=============================================================================================
```

The `Status` shows that the checksum is not configured.

Step 3 Enter global configuration mode.

Example:

```
Router#configure
```

Step 4 Configure the checksum.

Example:

```
Router(config)#script exec sample1.py checksum SHA256
94336f3997521d6e1aec0ee6faab0233562d53d4de7b0092e80b53caed58414b
Router(config)#commit
Tue Aug 24 10:23:10.546 UTC
Router(config)#end
```

Step 5 Verify the status of the script.

Example:

```
Router#show script status detail
Fri Aug 20 05:06:17.296 UTC
==========================================================================================

 Name                            | Type   | Status           | Last Action | Action Time
------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

 sample1.py                      | exec   | Ready            | NEW         | Fri Aug 20 05:03:41 2021
------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

 Script Name       : cpu_load.py
 Checksum          : 94336f3997521d6e1aec0ee6faab0233562d53d4de7b0092e80b53caed58414b
 History:
 --------
 1.   Action       : NEW
      Time         : Fri Aug 20 05:03:41 2021
      Checksum     : 94336f3997521d6e1aec0ee6faab0233562d53d4de7b0092e80b53caed58414b
      Description  : User action IN_CLOSE_WRITE
=========================================================================================
```

The status `Ready` indicates that the checksum is configured and the script is ready to be run. When the script is run, the checksum value is recalculated to check if it matches with the configured hash value. If the values differ, the script fails. It is mandatory for the checksum values to match for the script to run.

Run the Exec Script

To run an exec script, use the **script run** command. After the script is run, a request ID is generated. Each script run is associated with a unique request ID.

Before you begin

Ensure the following prerequisites are met before you run the script:

1. Download the Script to the Router, on page 119
2. Configure Checksum for Exec Script, on page 123

Procedure

Run the exec script.

Example:

```
Router#script run sample1.py
Wed Aug 25 16:40:59.134 UTC
Script run scheduled: sample1.py. Request ID: 1629800603
Script sample1.py (exec) Execution complete: (Req. ID 1629800603) : Return Value: 0 (Executed)
```

Scripts can be run with more options. The following table lists the various options that you can provide at run time:

Keyword	Description
arguments	Script command-line arguments. Syntax: Strings in single quotes. Escape double quotes inside string arguments (if any). For example: `Router#script run sample1.py arguments 'hello world' '-r' '-t' 'exec' '--sleep' '5' description "Sample exec script"`
background	Run script in background. By default, the script runs in the foreground. When a script is run in the background, the console is accessible only after the script run is complete.
description	Description about the script run. `Router#script run sample1.py arguments '-arg1' 'reload' '-arg2' 'all' 'description' "Script reloads the router"` When you provide both the argument and description ensure that the arguments are in single quote and description is in double quotes.
log-level	Script logging level. The default value is `INFO`. You can specifiy what information is to be logged. The log level can be set to one of these options—Critical, Debug, Error, Info, or Warning.
log-path	Location to store the script logs. The default log file location is in the script management repository `harddisk:/mirror/script-mgmt/logs`.
max-runtime	Maximum run-time of script can be set between 1–3600 seconds. The default value is 300.

The script run is complete.

View the Script Execution Details

View the status of the script execution.

Before you begin

Ensure the following prerequisites are met before you run the script:

1. Download the Script to the Router, on page 119
2. Configure Checksum for Exec Script, on page 123
3. Run the Exec Script, on page 125

Procedure

Step 1 View the status of the script execution.

Example:

```
Router#show script execution
Wed Aug 25 18:32:12.351 UTC
==========================================================================================================

 Req. ID   | Name (type)              | Start                    | Duration   | Return | Status
----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

 1629800603| sample1.py (exec)        | Wed Aug 25 16:40:59 2021 | 60.62s     | 0      | Executed
==========================================================================================================
```

You can view detailed or filtered data for every script run.

Step 2 Filter the script execution status to view the detailed output of a specific script run via request ID.

Example:

```
Router#show script execution request-id 1629800603 detail output
Wed Aug 25 18:37:12.920 UTC
==========================================================================================================

 Req. ID   | Name (type)                              | Start                    | Duration   |
Return | Status
----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

 1629800603| sample1.py (exec)                        | Wed Aug 25 16:40:59 2021 | 60.62s     | 0
     | Executed
----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

 Execution Details:
 ------------------
 Script Name  : sample1.py
 Log location : /harddisk:/mirror/script-mgmt/logs/sample1.py_exec_1629800603
 Arguments    :
 Run Options  : Logging level - INFO, Max. Runtime - 300s, Mode - Foreground
 Events:
 -------
 1.   Event        : New
      Time         : Wed Aug 25 16:40:59 2021
      Time Elapsed : 0.00s Seconds
      Description  : None
 2.   Event        : Started
      Time         : Wed Aug 25 16:40:59 2021
      Time Elapsed : 0.03s Seconds
      Description  : Script execution started. PID (20736)
 3.   Event        : Executed
      Time         : Wed Aug 25 16:42:00 2021
      Time Elapsed : 60.62s Seconds
      Description  : Script execution complete
----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

 Script Output:
 --------------
 Output File  : /harddisk:/mirror/script-mgmt/logs/sample1.py_exec_1629800603/stdout.log
 Content      :
==========================================================================================================
```

Keyword	Description
detail	Display detailed script execution history, errors, output and deleted scripts. `Router#show script execution detail [errors | output | show-del]`

Keyword	Description
last <number>	Show last N (1-100) execution requests. `Router#show script execution last 10` This example will display the list of last 10 script runs with their request IDs, type of script, timestamp, duration that the script was run, number of errrors, and the status of the script run.
name <filename>	Filter operational data based on script name. If not specified, all scripts are displayed. `Router#show script execution name sample1.py`
request-id <value>	Display summary of the script using request-ID that is generated with each script run. `Router#show script execution request-ID 1629800603`
reverse	Display the request IDs from the script execution in reverse chronological order. For example, the request-ID from the latest run is displayed first, followed by the descending order of request-IDs. `Router#script script execution reverse`
status	Filter data based on script status. `Router#[status {Exception, Executed, Killed, Started, Stopped, Timed-out}]`

Manage Scripts

This section shows the additional operations that you can perform on a script.

Delete Exec Script from the Router

Delete the script from the script management repository using the **script remove** command. This repository stores the downloaded scripts.

Procedure

Step 1 View the list of scripts present in the script management repository.

Example:

```
Router#show script status
Wed Aug 25 23:10:50.453 UTC
=============================================================================================================
Name       | Type   | Status          | Last Action | Action Time
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------
sample1.py | exec   | Config Checksum | NEW         | Tue Aug 24 10:18:23 2021
sample2.py | exec   | Config Checksum | NEW         | Wed Aug 25 23:44:53 2021
sample3.py | config | Config Checksum | NEW         | Wed Aug 25 23:44:57 2021
```

Ensure the script you want to delete is present in the repository.

Step 2 Delete the script.

Example:

```
Router#script remove exec sample2.py
Wed Aug 25 231:46:38.170 UTC
sample2.py has been deleted from the script repository
```

You can also delete multiple scripts simulataneoulsy.

Step 3 Verify the script is deleted from the subdirectory.

Example:

```
Router#show script status
Wed Aug 25 23:48:50.453 UTC
=============================================================================================================
Name       | Type   | Status          | Last Action | Action Time
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------
sample1.py | exec   | Config Checksum | NEW         | Tue Aug 24 10:18:23 2021
sample3.py | config | Config Checksum | NEW         | Wed Aug 25 10:44:57 2021
```

The script is deleted from the script management repository.

Example: Exec Script to Verify Bundle Interfaces

In this example, you create a script to verify the bandwidth usage of bundle interfaces on the router, and check if it is beyond the defined limit. If usage is above the limit, the script generates a syslog indicating that the bandwidth is above the limit, and additional interfaces must be added to the bundle.

Before you begin

Ensure you have completed the following prerequisites before you validate the script:

1. Create an exec script `verify_bundle.py`. Store the script on an HTTP server or copy the script to the harddisk of the router.

```
"""
Bundle interfaces bandwidth verification script

Verify bundle interfaces mpls packets per sec is below threshold.
If pkts/sec is greater than threshold then print syslog message
and add list of new interfaces to bundle

Arguments:
  -h, --help            show this help message and exit
  -n NAME, --name NAME  Bundle interface name
  -t THRESHOLD, --threshold THRESHOLD
                        Bandwidth threshold
  -m MEMBERS, --members MEMBERS
                        interfaces (coma separated) to add to bundle
"""
import re
import argparse
from iosxr.xrcli.xrcli_helper import XrcliHelper
from cisco.script_mgmt import xrlog

syslog = xrlog.getSysLogger('verify_bundle')
log = xrlog.getScriptLogger('verify_bundle')
```

```
def add_bundle_members(bundle_name, members):

    helper = XrcliHelper()
    bundle_pattern = re.compile('[A-Z,a-z, ]([0-9]+)')
    match = bundle_pattern.search(bundle_name)
    if match:
        bundle_id = match.group(1)
    else:
        raise Exception('Invalid bundle name')
    cfg = ''
    for member in members:

        cfg = cfg + 'interface %s \nbundle id %s mode active\nno shutdown\n' % \
              (member.strip(), bundle_id)

    log.info("Configs to be added : \n%s" % cfg)
    result = helper.xr_apply_config_string(cfg)
    if result['status'] == 'success':
        msg = "Configuring new bundle members successful"
        syslog.info(msg)
        log.info(msg)
    else:
        msg = "Configuring new bundle members failed"
        syslog.warning(msg)
        log.warning(msg)


def verify_bundle(script_args):

    helper = XrcliHelper()
    cmd = "show interfaces %s accounting rates" % script_args.name
    cmd_out = helper.xrcli_exec(cmd)
    if not cmd_out['status'] == 'success':
        raise Exception('Invalid bundle or error getting interface accounting rates')

    log.info('Command output : \n%s' % cmd_out['output'])
    rate_pattern = re.compile("MPLS +[0-9]+ +[0-9]+ +[0-9]+ +([0-9]+)")
    match = rate_pattern.search(cmd_out['output'])
    if match:
        pktspersec = int(match.group(1))
        if pktspersec > int(script_args.threshold):
            msg = 'Bundle %s bandwidth of %d pps is above threshold of %s pps' % \
                    (script_args.name, pktspersec, script_args.threshold)
            log.info(msg)
            syslog.info(msg)
            return False
        else:
            msg = 'Bundle %s bandwidth of %d pps is below threshold of %s pps' % \
                    (script_args.name, pktspersec, script_args.threshold)
            log.info(msg)
            return True


if __name__ == '__main__':

    parser = argparse.ArgumentParser(description="Verify budle")
    parser.add_argument("-n", "--name",
                        help="Bundle interface name")
    parser.add_argument("-t", "--threshold",
                        help="Bandwidth threshold")
    parser.add_argument("-m", "--members",
                        help="interfaces (coma separated) to add to bundle")
```

```
args = parser.parse_args()
log.info('Script arguments :')
log.info(args)
if not verify_bundle(args):
    syslog.info("Adding new members (%s) to bundle interfaces %s" %
                (args.members, args.name))
    add_bundle_members(args.name, args.members.split(','))
```

2. Add the script from HTTP server or harddisk to the script management repository. See Download the Script to the Router, on page 119.
3. Configure the checksum to verify the authenticity and integrity of the script.

Procedure

Step 1 View the script status.

Example:

```
Router#show script status
Sat Sep 25 00:10:11.222 UTC
================================================================================
Name                | Type   | Status   | Last Action | Action Time
--------------------------------------------------------------------------------
verify_bundle.py    | exec   | Ready    | MODIFY      | Sat Sep 25 00:08:55 2021
================================================================================
```

The status indicates that the script is ready to be run.

Step 2 Run the script.

Example:

```
Router#script run verify_bundle.py arguments '--name' 'Bundle-Ether6432' '-t'
'400000' '-m' 'FourHundredGigE0/0/0/2
Sat Sep 25 00:11:14.183 UTC
Script run scheduled: verify_bundle.py. Request ID: 1632528674
[2021-09-25 00:11:14,579] INFO [verify_bundle]:: Script arguments :
[2021-09-25 00:11:14,579] INFO [verify_bundle]:: Namespace(members='FourHundredGigE0/0/0/2,
FourHundredGigE0/0/0/3', name='Bundle-Ether6432', threshold='400000')
[2021-09-25 00:11:14,735] INFO [verify_bundle]:: Command output :

-------------- show interfaces Bundle-Ether6432 accounting rates --------------
Bundle-Ether6432
                              Ingress                        Egress
  Protocol             Bits/sec         Pkts/sec     Bits/sec         Pkts/sec
  IPV4_UNICAST            22000               40            0                0
  MPLS                        0                0   1979249000           430742
  ARP                         0                0            0                0
  IPV6_ND                     0                0            0                0
  CLNS                     1000                1        26000                3



[2021-09-25 00:11:14,736] INFO [verify_bundle]:: Bundle Bundle-Ether6432 bandwidth
of 430742 pps is above threshold of 400000 pps
[2021-09-25 00:11:14,737] INFO [verify_bundle]:: Configs to be added :
interface FourHundredGigE0/0/0/2
bundle id 6432 mode active
no shutdown
interface FourHundredGigE0/0/0/3
bundle id 6432 mode active
```

```
no shutdown

[2021-09-25 00:11:18,254] INFO [verify_bundle]:: Configuring new bundle members successful
Script verify_bundle.py (exec) Execution complete: (Req. ID 1632528674) : Return Value: 0 (Executed)
```

Step 3 View the detailed output based on request ID. A request ID is generated for each script run.

Example:

```
Router#show script execution request-id 1632528674 detail output
Sat Sep 25 00:11:58.141 UTC
===============================================================================================
Req. ID   | Name (type)                | Start                    | Duration   | Return | Status
-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------
1632528674| verify_bundle.py (exec)    | Sat Sep 25 00:11:14 2021 | 4.06s      | 0      | Executed
-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------
Execution Details:
------------------
Script Name  : verify_bundle.py
Log location : /harddisk:/mirror/script-mgmt/logs/verify_bundle.py_exec_1632528674
Arguments    : '--name', 'Bundle-Ether6432', '-t', '400000', '-m', 'FourHundredGigE0/0/0/2,
FourHundredGigE0/0/0/3'
Run Options  : Logging level - INFO, Max. Runtime - 300s, Mode - Foreground
Events:
-------
1.   Event        : New
      Time         : Sat Sep 25 00:11:14 2021
      Time Elapsed : 0.00s Seconds
      Description  : None
2.   Event        : Started
      Time         : Sat Sep 25 00:11:14 2021
      Time Elapsed : 0.02s Seconds
      Description  : Script execution started. PID (29768)
3.   Event        : Executed
      Time         : Sat Sep 25 00:11:18 2021
      Time Elapsed : 4.06s Seconds
      Description  : Script execution complete
-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------
Script Output:
--------------
Output File  : /harddisk:/mirror/script-mgmt/logs/verify_bundle.py_exec_1632528674/stdout.log
Content      :
[2021-09-25 00:11:14,579] INFO [verify_bundle]:: Script arguments :
[2021-09-25 00:11:14,579] INFO [verify_bundle]:: Namespace(members='FourHundredGigE0/0/0/2,
FourHundredGigE0/0/0/3',
name='Bundle-Ether6432', threshold='400000')
[2021-09-25 00:11:14,735] INFO [verify_bundle]:: Command output :

-------------- show interfaces Bundle-Ether6432 accounting rates --------------
Bundle-Ether6432
                              Ingress                        Egress
  Protocol             Bits/sec         Pkts/sec     Bits/sec         Pkts/sec
  IPV4_UNICAST            22000               40            0                0
  MPLS                        0                0   1979249000           430742
  ARP                         0                0            0                0
  IPV6_ND                     0                0            0                0
  CLNS                     1000                1        26000                3

[2021-09-25 00:11:14,736] INFO [verify_bundle]:: Bundle Bundle-Ether6432 bandwidth of 430742 pps is
 above threshold
of 400000 pps
[2021-09-25 00:11:14,737] INFO [verify_bundle]:: Configs to be added :
interface FourHundredGigE0/0/0/2
bundle id 6432 mode active
```

```
no shutdown
interface FourHundredGigE0/0/0/3
bundle id 6432 mode active
no shutdown

[2021-09-25 00:11:18,254] INFO [verify_bundle]:: Configuring new bundle members successful
================================================================================================================
```

Step 4 View the running configuration for the bundle interfaces.

Example:

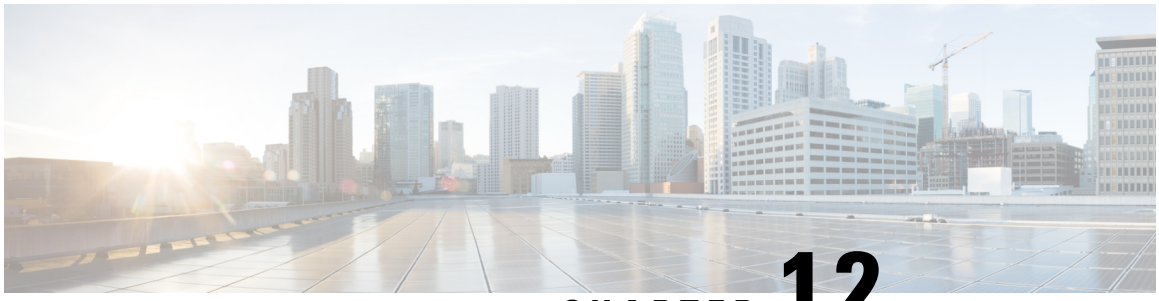
```
Router#show running-config interface FourHundredGigE0/0/0/2
Sat Sep 25 00:12:30.765 UTC
interface FourHundredGigE0/0/0/2
bundle id 6432 mode active
!

Router#show running-config interface FourHundredGigE0/0/0/3
Sat Sep 25 00:12:38.659 UTC
interface FourHundredGigE0/0/0/3
bundle id 6432 mode active
!
```

Step 5 View the latest logs for more details about the script run. Here, the last 10 logs are displayed. The logs show that configuring new bundle members is successful.

Example:

```
Router#show logging last 10
Sat Sep 25 00:13:34.383 UTC
Syslog logging: enabled (0 messages dropped, 0 flushes, 0 overruns)
    Console logging: level warnings, 178 messages logged
    Monitor logging: level debugging, 0 messages logged
    Trap logging: level informational, 0 messages logged
    Buffer logging: level debugging, 801 messages logged

Log Buffer (2097152 bytes):

RP/0/RP0/CPU0:Sep 25 00:10:05.763 UTC: config[66385]: %MGBL-CONFIG-6-DB_COMMIT : Configuration
committed by user 'cisco'.
Use 'show configuration commit changes 1000000045' to view the changes.
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:Sep 25 00:10:07.971 UTC: config[66385]: %MGBL-SYS-5-CONFIG_I : Configured from console
 by cisco on vty0 (6.3.65.175)
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:Sep 25 00:11:14.447 UTC: script_control_cli[66627]: %OS-SCRIPT_MGMT-6-INFO :
Script-control: Script run scheduled:
verify_bundle.py. Request ID: 1632528674
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:Sep 25 00:11:14.453 UTC: script_agent_main[347]: %OS-SCRIPT_MGMT-6-INFO :
Script-script_agent: Script execution
verify_bundle.py (exec) Started : Request ID : 1632528674 :: PID: 29768
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:Sep 25 00:11:14.453 UTC: script_agent_main[347]: %OS-SCRIPT_MGMT-6-INFO :
Script-script_agent: Starting execution
verify_bundle.py (exec) (Req. ID: 1632528674) : Logs directory:
/harddisk:/mirror/script-mgmt/logs/verify_bundle.py_exec_1632528674
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:Sep 25 00:11:14.736 UTC: python3_xr[66632]: %OS-SCRIPT_MGMT-6-INFO : Script-verify_bundle:
 Bundle Bundle-Ether6432
bandwidth of 430742 pps is above threshold of 400000 pps
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:Sep 25 00:11:14.736 UTC: python3_xr[66632]: %OS-SCRIPT_MGMT-6-INFO : Script-verify_bundle:
 Adding new members
(FourHundredGigE0/0/0/2, FourHundredGigE0/0/0/3) to bundle interfaces Bundle-Ether6432
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:Sep 25 00:11:16.916 UTC: config[66655]: %MGBL-CONFIG-6-DB_COMMIT : Configuration
committed by user 'cisco'. Use 'show
configuration commit changes 1000000046' to view the changes.
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:Sep 25 00:11:18.254 UTC: python3_xr[66632]: %OS-SCRIPT_MGMT-6-INFO : Script-verify_bundle:
```

```
 Configuring new bundle members
successful
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:Sep 25 00:11:18.497 UTC: script_agent_main[347]: %OS-SCRIPT_MGMT-6-INFO :
Script-script_agent: Script verify_bundle.py
(exec) Execution complete: (Req. ID 1632528674) : Return Value: 0 (Executed)
```



CHAPTER 12

Process Scripts

Cisco IOS XR process scripts are also called daemon scripts. The process scripts are persistent scripts that continue to run as long as you have activated the scripts. An IOS XR process, Application manager (AppMgr or app manager), manages the lifecycle of process scripts. The scripts are registered as an application on the app manager. This application represents the instance of the script that is running on the router.

The app manager is used to:

- Start, stop, monitor, or retrieve the operational status of the script.
- Maintain the startup dependencies between the processes.
- Restart the process if the script terminates unexpectedly based on the configured restart policy.

Process scripts support Python 3.5 programming language. For the list of supported packages, see Cisco IOS XR Python Packages.

This chapter gets you started with provisioning your Python automation scripts on the router.

Note This chapter does not delve into creating Python scripts, but assumes that you have basic understanding of Python programming language. This section will walk you through the process involved in deploying and using the scripts on the router. A process script refers to code that runs continuously or endlessly.

- Workflow to Run Process Scripts, on page 135
- Managing Actions on Process Script, on page 145
- Example: Check CPU Utilization at Regular Intervals Using Process Script, on page 145

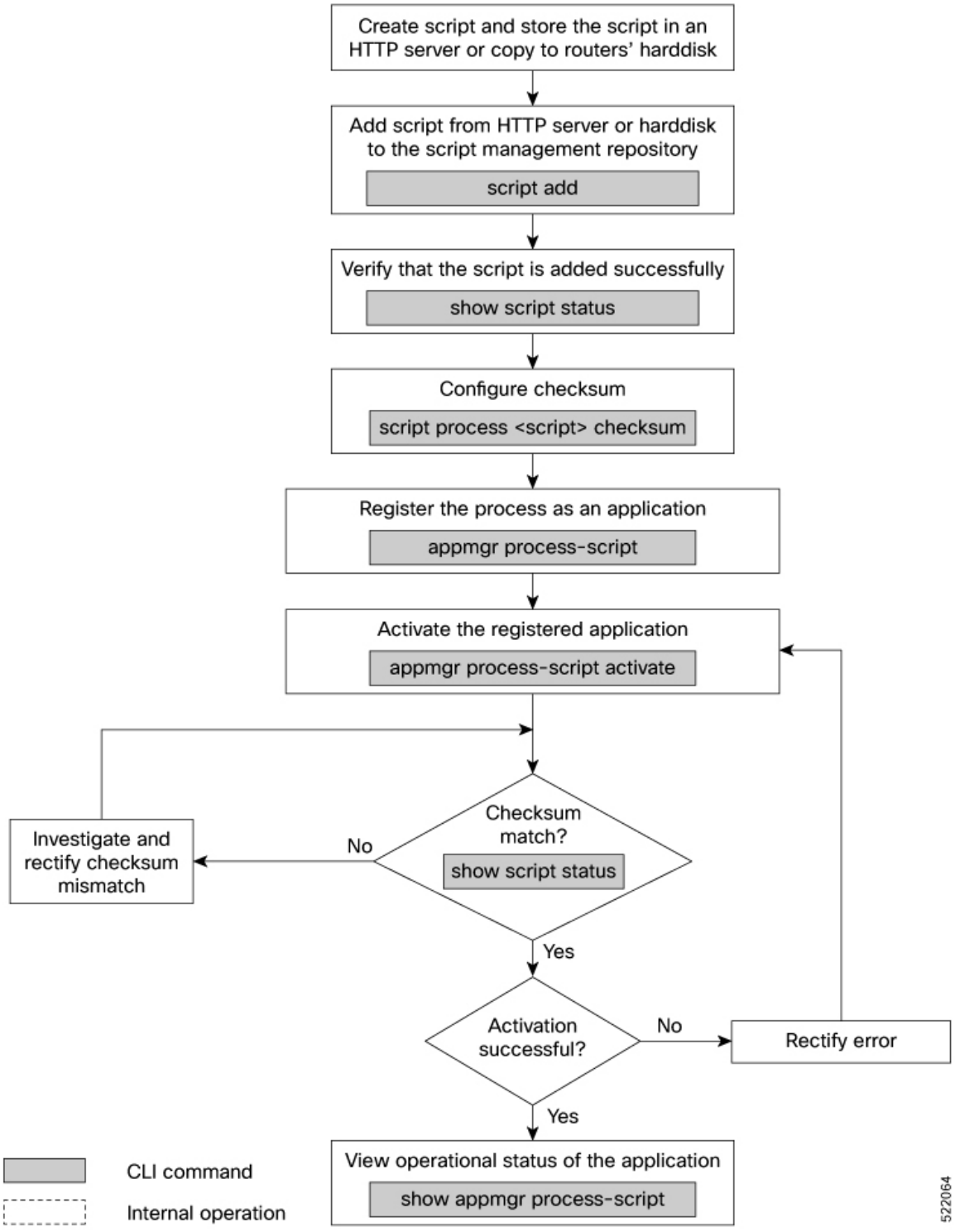
Workflow to Run Process Scripts

Complete the following tasks to provision process scripts:

- Download the script—Store the script on an external server or copy to the harddisk of the router. Add the script from the external server or harddisk to the script management repository on the router using the **script add process** command.
- Configure the checksum—Check script integrity and authenticity using the **script process <script.py> checksum** command.

- Register the script—Register the script as an application in the app manager using **appmgr process-script** command.
- Activate the script—Activate the registered application using **appmgr process-script activate** command.
- View the script execution details—Retrieve the operational data using the **show appmgr process-script** command.

The following image shows the workflow diagram representing the steps that are involved in using a process script:


Create script and store the script in an HTTP server or copy to routers' harddisk
Add script from HTTP server or harddisk to the script management repository
script add
Verify that the script is added successfully
show script status
Configure checksum
script process <script> checksum
Register the process as an application
appmgr process-script
Activate the registered application
appmgr process-script activate
Checksum match?
show script status
No
Investigate and rectify checksum mismatch
Yes
Activation successful?
No
Rectify error
Yes
View operational status of the application
show appmgr process-script
CLI command
Internal operation
522064

Download the Script to the Router

To manage the scripts, you must add the scripts to the script management repository on the router. A subdirectory is created for each script type. By default, this repository stores the downloaded scripts in the appropriate subdirectory based on script type.

Script Type	Download Location
config	`harddisk:/mirror/script-mgmt/config`
exec	`harddisk:/mirror/script-mgmt/exec`
process	`harddisk:/mirror/script-mgmt/process`
eem	`harddisk:/mirror/script-mgmt/eem`

The scripts are added to the script management repository using two methods:

- **Method 1:** Add script from a server
- **Method 2:** Copy script from external repository to harddisk using **scp** or **copy** command

In this section, you learn how to add `process-script.py` script to the script management repository.

Procedure

Step 1 Add the script to the script management repository on the router using one of the two options:

- **Add Script From a Server**

  Add the script from any server or the harddisk location in the router.

  ```
  Router#script add process <script-location> <script.py>
  ```

  The following example shows a process script `process-script.py` downloaded from an external repository `http://192.0.2.0/scripts`:

  ```
  Router#script add process http://192.0.2.0/scripts process-script.py
  Fri Aug 20 05:03:40.791 UTC
  process-script.py has been added to the script repository
  ```

  The `script add process` supports the HTTP, HTTPS, FTP, TFTP, and SCP protocols for copying a script.

  You can add a maximum of 10 scripts simultaneously.

  ```
  Router#script add process <script-location> <script1.py> <script2.py> ... <script10.py>
  ```

  You can also specify the checksum value while downloading the script. This value ensures that the file being copied is genuine. You can fetch the checksum of the script from the server from where you are downloading the script. However, specifying checksum while downloading the script is optional.

  ```
  Router#script add process http://192.0.2.0/scripts process-script.py checksum SHA256
  <checksum-value>
  ```

  For multiple scripts, use the following syntax to specify the checksum:

  ```
  Router#script add process http://192.0.2.0/scripts <script1.py> <script1-checksum> <script2.py>
   <script2-checksum>
  ... <script10.py> <script10-checksum>
  ```

If you specify the checksum for one script, you must specify the checksum for all the scripts that you download.

Note
Only SHA256 checksum is supported.

- **Copy the Script from an External Repository**

  You can copy the script from the external repository to the routers' harddisk and then add the script to the script management repository.

  a. Copy the script from a remote location to harddisk using scp or copy command.

  ```
  Router#scp userx@192.0.2.0:/scripts/process-script.py /harddisk:/
  ```

  b. Add the script from the harddisk to the script management repository.

  ```
  Router#script add process /harddisk:/ process-script.py
  Fri Aug 20 05:03:40.791 UTC
  process-script.py has been added to the script repository
  ```

Step 2 Verify that the scripts are downloaded to the script management repository on the router.

Example:

```
Router#show script status
Wed Aug 25 23:10:50.453 UTC
=============================================================================================
 Name              | Type     | Status           | Last Action | Action Time
---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------
 process-script.py | process  | Config Checksum  | NEW         | Tue Aug 24 10:44:53 2021
=============================================================================================
```

Script `process-script.py` is copied to `harddisk:/mirror/script-mgmt/process` directory on the router.

Configure Checksum for Process Script

Every script is associated with a checksum hash value. This value ensures the integrity of the script, and that the script is not tampered. The checksum is a string of numbers and letters that acts as a fingerprint for script. The checksum of the script is compared with the configured checksum. If the values do not match, the script is not run and a warning message is displayed.

It is mandatory to configure the checksum to run the script.

Note Process scripts support the SHA256 checksum hash.

Before you begin

Ensure that the script is added to the script management repository. See Download the Script to the Router, on page 119.

Procedure

Step 1 Retrieve the SHA256 checksum hash value for the script from the IOS XR Linux bash shell.

Example:

```
Router#run
[node0_RP0_CPU0:~]$sha256sum /harddisk:/mirror/script-mgmt/process/process-script.py
94336f3997521d6e1aec0ee6faab0233562d53d4de7b0092e80b53caed58414b
/harddisk:/mirror/script-mgmt/process/process-script.py
```

Make note of the checksum value.

Step 2 View the status of the script.

Example:

```
Router#show script status detail
Fri Aug 20 05:04:13.539 UTC
=============================================================================================
 Name                    | Type     | Status           | Last Action | Action Time
---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------
process-script.py        | process  | Config Checksum  | NEW         | Fri Aug 20 05:03:41 2021
---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------
 Script Name       : process-script.py
 History:
 --------
 1.   Action       : NEW
      Time         : Fri Aug 20 05:03:41 2021
      Description  : User action IN_CLOSE_WRITE
=============================================================================================
```

The `Status` shows that the checksum is not configured.

Step 3 Configure the checksum.

Example:

```
Router#configure
Router(config)#script process process-script.py checksum SHA256
94336f3997521d6e1aec0ee6faab0233562d53d4de7b0092e80b53caed58414b
Router(config)#commit
Tue Aug 20 05:10:10.546 UTC
Router(config)#end
```

Step 4 Verify the status of the script.

Example:

```
Router#show script status detail
Fri Aug 20 05:15:17.296 UTC
=============================================================================================
 Name                  | Type     | Status      | Last Action | Action Time
---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------
 process-script.py     | process  | Ready       | NEW         | Fri Aug 20 05:20:41 2021
---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------
 Script Name       : process-script.py
 Checksum          : 94336f3997521d6e1aec0ee6faab0233562d53d4de7b0092e80b53caed58414b
 History:
 --------
 1.   Action       : NEW
      Time         : Fri Aug 20 05:20:41 2021
      Checksum     : 94336f3997521d6e1aec0ee6faab0233562d53d4de7b0092e80b53caed58414b
```

```
      Description  : User action IN_CLOSE_WRITE
==============================================================================================
```

The status `Ready` indicates that the checksum is configured and the script is ready to be run. When the script is run, the checksum value is recalculated to check if it matches with the configured hash value. If the values differ, the script fails. It is mandatory for the checksum values to match for the script to run.

Register the Process Script as an Application

Register the process script with the app manager to enable the script. The registration is mandatory for using process script on the router.

Before you begin

Ensure that the following prerequisites are met before you register the script:

- Download the Script to the Router, on page 119
- Configure Checksum for Process Script, on page 139

Procedure

Step 1 Register the script with an application (instance) name in the app manager.

Example:

```
Router#configure
Fri Aug 20 06:10:19.284 UTC
Router(config)#appmgr process-script my-process-app
Router(config-process)#executable process-script.py
```

Here, `my-process-app` is the application for the executable `process-script.py` script.

Step 2 Provide the arguments for the script.

Example:

```
Router(config-process)#run-args --host <host-name> --runtime 3 --log script
```

Step 3 Set a restart policy for the script if there is an error.

Example:

```
Router(config-process)#restart on-failure max-retries 3
Router(config-process)#commit
```

Here, the maximum attempts to restart the script is set to 3. After 3 attempts, the script stops.

You can set more options to restart the process:

Keyword	Description
always	Always restart automatically. If the process exits, a scheduler queues the script and restarts the script. **Note** This is the default restart policy.
never	Never restart automatically. If the process exits, the script is not rerun unless you provide an action command to invoke the process.
on-failure	Restart on failure automatically. If the script exits successfully, the script is not scheduled again.
unless-errored	Restart script automatically unless errored.
unless-stopped	Restart script automatically unless stopped by the user using an action command.

Step 4 View the status of the registered script.

Example:

```
Router#show appmgr process-script-table
Fri Aug 20 06:15:44.244 UTC
Name            Executable          Activated    Status      Restart Policy   Config Pending
--------------- ------------------- --------- ------------- ---------------- --------------
my-process-app  process-script.py      No      Not Started  On Failure             No
```

The script is registered but is not active.

Activate the Process Script

Activate the process script that you registered with the app manager.

Before you begin

Ensure that the following prerequisites are met before you run the script:

- Download the Script to the Router, on page 119
- Configure Checksum for Process Script, on page 139
- Register the Process Script as an Application, on page 141

Procedure

Step 1 Activate the process script.

Example:

```
Router#appmgr process-script activate name my-process-app
Fri Aug 20 06:20:55.006 UTC
```

The instance `my-process-app` is activated for the process script.

Step 2 View the status of the activated script.

Example:

```
Router#show appmgr process-script-table
Fri Aug 20 06:22:03.201 UTC
Name             Executable         Activated    Status     Restart Policy   Config Pending
---------------  ------------------ --------- ------------- ---------------- --------------
my-process-app   process-script.py      Yes       Running    On Failure            No
```

The process script is activated and running.

Note
You can modify the script while the script is running. However, for the changes to take effect, you must deactivate and activate the script again. Until then, the configuration changes are pending. The status of the modification is indicated in the `Config Pending` option. In the example, value `No` indicates that there are no configuration changes that must be activated.

Obtain Operational Data and Logs

Retrieve the operational data and logs of the script.

Before you begin

Ensure that the following prerequisites are met before you obtain the operational data:

- Download the Script to the Router, on page 119
- Configure Checksum for Process Script, on page 139
- Register the Process Script as an Application, on page 141
- Activate the Process Script, on page 142

Procedure

Step 1 View the registration information, pending configuration, execution information, and run time of the process script.

Example:

```
Router#show appmgr process-script my-process-app info
Fri Aug 20 06:20:21.947 UTC
Application: my-process-app

  Registration info:
    Executable                  : process-script.py
    Run arguments               : --host <host-name> --runtime 3 --log script
    Restart policy              : On Failure
    Maximum restarts            : 3

  Pending Configuration:
    Run arguments               : --host <host-name> --runtime 3 --log script
    Restart policy              : Always
```

```
  Execution info and status:
    Activated                     : Yes
    Status                        : Running
    Executable Checksum          : 94336f3997521d6e1aec0ee6faab0233562d53d4de7b0092e80b53caed58414b

    Last started time             : Fri Aug 20 06:20:21.947
    Restarts since last activate  : 0/3
    Log location                  :
/harddisk:/mirror/script-mgmt/logs/process-script.py_process_my-process-app
    Last exit code                : 1
```

Step 2 View the logs for the process scripts. App manager shows the logs for errors and output.

Example:

The following example shows the output logs:

```
Router#show appmgr process-script my-process-app logs output
Fri Aug 20 06:25:20.912 UTC
[2021-08-20 06:20:55,609] INFO [sample-process]:: Beginning execution of process..
[2021-08-20 06:20:55,609] INFO [sample-process]:: Connecting to host '<host-name>'
[2021-08-20 06:20:56,610] INFO [sample-process]:: Reading database..
[2021-08-20 06:20:58,609] INFO [sample-process]:: Listening for requests..
```

The following example shows the error logs with errors:

```
Router#show appmgr process-script my-process-app logs errors
Fri Aug 20 06:30:20.912 UTC
----------Run ID:1632914459  Fri Aug 20 06:30:20 2021----------
Traceback (most recent call last):
  File "/harddisk:/mirror/script-mgmt/process/process-script.py", line 121, in <module>
    main(args)
  File "/harddisk:/mirror/script-mgmt/process/process-script.py", line 97, in main
    printer()
  File "/harddisk:/mirror/script-mgmt/process/process-script.py", line 37, in wrapper
    result = func(*args, **kwargs)
  File "/harddisk:/mirror/script-mgmt/process/process-script.py", line 88, in printer
    time.sleep(1)
  File "/harddisk:/mirror/script-mgmt/process/process-script.py", line 30, in _handle_timeout
    raise TimeoutError(error_message)
__main__.TimeoutError: Timer expired
----------Run ID:1632914460  Fri Aug 20 06:31:03 2021----------
```

This example shows the log without errors:

```
Router#show appmgr process-script my-process-app logs errors
Fri Aug 20 06:30:20.912 UTC
----------Run ID:1624346220  Fri Aug 20 10:46:44 2021----------
----------Run ID:1624346221  Fri Aug 20 10:47:50 2021----------
----------Run ID:1624346222  Fri Aug 20 10:52:39 2021----------
----------Run ID:1624346223  Fri Aug 20 10:53:45 2021----------
----------Run ID:1624346224  Fri Aug 20 11:07:17 2021----------
----------Run ID:1624346225  Fri Aug 20 11:08:23 2021----------
----------Run ID:1624346226  Fri Aug 20 11:09:29 2021----------
----------Run ID:1624346227  Fri Aug 20 11:10:35 2021----------
----------Run ID:1624346228  Fri Aug 20 11:11:41 2021----------
```

Managing Actions on Process Script

The process script runs as a daemon continuously. You can, however, perform the following actions on the process script and its application:

Table 18: Feature History Table

Action	Description
Deactivate	Clears all the resources that the application uses. `Router#appmgr process-script deactivate name my-process-app` You can modify the script while the script is running. However, for the changes to take effect, you must deactivate and activate the script again. Until then, the configuration changes do not take effect.
Kill	Terminates the script if the option to stop the script is unresponsive. `Router#appmgr process-script kill name my-process-app`
Restart	Restarts the process script. `Router#appmgr process-script restart name my-process-app`
Start	Starts an application that is already registered and activated with the app manager. `Router#appmgr process-script start name my-process-app`
Stop	Stops an application that is already registered, activated, and is currently running. Only the application is stopped; resources that the application uses is not cleared. `Router#appmgr process-script stop name my-process-app`

Example: Check CPU Utilization at Regular Intervals Using Process Script

In this example, you use the process script to check CPU utilization at regular intervals. The script does the following actions:

- Monitor the CPU threshold value.
- If the threshold value equals or exceeds the value passed as argument to the script, log an error message that the threshold value has exceeded.

Before you begin

Ensure you have completed the following prerequisites before you register and activate the script:

1. Create a process script `cpu-utilization-process.py`. Store the script on an external server or copy the script to the harddisk of the router.

```
import time
import os
```

```
import xmltodict
import re
import argparse

from cisco.script_mgmt import xrlog
from iosxr.netconf.netconf_lib import NetconfClient

log = xrlog.getScriptLogger('Sample')
syslog = xrlog.getSysLogger('Sample')

def cpu_memory_check(threshold):
    """
    Check total routes in router
    """
    filter_string = """
    <system-monitoring xmlns="http://cisco.com/ns/yang/Cisco-IOS-XR-wdsysmon-fd-oper">
      <cpu-utilization>
        <node-name>0/RP0/CPU0</node-name>
          <total-cpu-one-minute/>
      </cpu-utilization>
    </system-monitoring>"""
    nc = NetconfClient(debug=True)
    nc.connect()
    do_get(nc, filter=filter_string)
    ret_dict = _xml_to_dict(nc.reply, 'system-monitoring')
    total_cpu =
int(ret_dict['system-monitoring']['cpu-utilization']['total-cpu-one-minute'])
    if total_cpu >= threshold:
        syslog.error("CPU utilization is %s, threshold value is %s"
%(str(total_cpu),str(threshold)))
    nc.close()

def _xml_to_dict(xml_output, xml_tag=None):
    """
    convert netconf rpc request to dict
    :param xml_output:
    :return:
    """
    if xml_tag:
        pattern = "<data>\s+(<%s.*</%s>).*</data>" % (xml_tag, xml_tag)
    else:
        pattern = "(<data>.*</data>)"
    xml_output = xml_output.replace('\n', ' ')
    xml_data_match = re.search(pattern, xml_output)
    ret_dict = xmltodict.parse(xml_data_match.group(1))
    return ret_dict

def do_get(nc, filter=None, path=None):
    try:
        if path is not None:
            nc.rpc.get(file=path)
        elif filter is not None:
            nc.rpc.get(request=filter)
        else:
            return False
    except Exception as e:
        return False
    return True

if __name__ == '__main__':
    parser = argparse.ArgumentParser()
    parser.add_argument("threshold", help="cpu utilization threshold",type=int)
    args = parser.parse_args()
    threshold = args.threshold
```

```
while(1):
    cpu_memory_check(threshold)
    time.sleep(30)
```

Configure the script with the desired threshold criteria. This default threshold is configured to alert when CPU utilization exceeds this value. The script checks the CPU utilization every 30 seconds.

2. Add the script from the external server or harddisk to the script management repository. See Download the Script to the Router, on page 119.
3. Configure the checksum to verify the authenticity and integrity of the script. See Configure Checksum for Process Script, on page 139.

Procedure

Step 1 Register the process script `cpu-utilization-process.py` with an instance name `my-process-app` in the app manager.

Example:

```
Router(config)#appmgr process-script my-process-app
Router(config-process)#executable cpu-utilization-process.py
Router(config-process)#run-args <threshold-value>
```

Step 2 Activate the registered application.

Example:

```
Router(config-process)#appmgr process-script activate name my-process-app
```

Step 3 Check the script status.

Example:

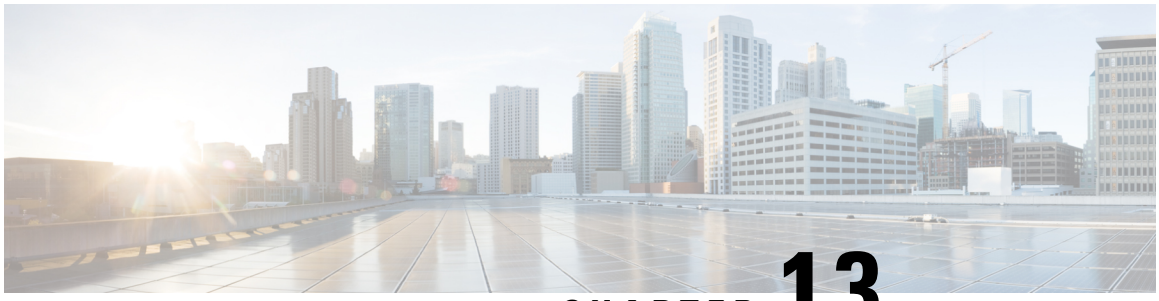
```
Router#show appmgr process-script-table
Thu Sep 30 18:15:03.201 UTC
Name             Executable                  Activated    Status     Restart Policy   Config Pending
---------------  --------------------------  ---------  ------------ ---------------- --------------
my-process-app   cpu-utilization-process.py      Yes       Running    On Failure            No
```

Step 4 View the log.

Example:

```
Router#show appmgr process-script my-process-app logs errors
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:Sep 30 18:03:54.391 UTC: python3_xr[68378]: %OS-SCRIPT_MGMT-3-ERROR :
Script-test_process: CPU utilization is 6, threshold value is 5
```

An error message is displayed that the CPU utilization has exceeded the configured threshold value, and helps you take corrective actions.



CHAPTER 13

EEM Scripts

Cisco IOS XR Embedded Event Manager (EEM) scripts are also known as event scripts that are triggered automatically in response to events on the router. An event can be any significant occurrence, not limited to errors, that has happened within the system. You can use these scripts to detect issues in the network in real time, program certain conditions in response to the event, detect and generate an action when those conditions are met, and execute policy (script) when an event is generated. The script acts in response to the events and reduces the troubleshooting time involved in resolving the issues. For example, you can enforce LACP dampening if a bundle interface has flapped 5 times in less than 30 secs, and define the script to disable the interface for 2 minutes.

You can programmatically define the event and actions separately and map them using a policy map via CLI or NETCONF RPCs. Whenever the configured event occurs, the action that is mapped to it is executed. The same event and action can be mapped to multiple policy maps. You can map the same event and action in 64 policy maps, and add a maximum of 5 different actions in a policy map.

You can create event scripts using Python 3.5 programming language. For the list of supported Python packages. You can also configure the EEM policies using Tool Command Language (TCL) scripts. To know more about TCL scripts, see *Configuring and Managing Embedded Event Manager Policies* Chapter in System Monitoring Configuration Guide.

This chapter gets you started with provisioning your Python automation scripts on the router.

Note This section does not delve into creating Python scripts, but assumes that you have basic understanding of Python programming language. This section will walk you through the process involved in deploying and using the scripts on the router.

- Workflow to Run Event Scripts, on page 149
- Example: Shut Inactive Bundle Interfaces Using EEM Script, on page 161

Workflow to Run Event Scripts

Complete the following tasks to provision eem scripts:

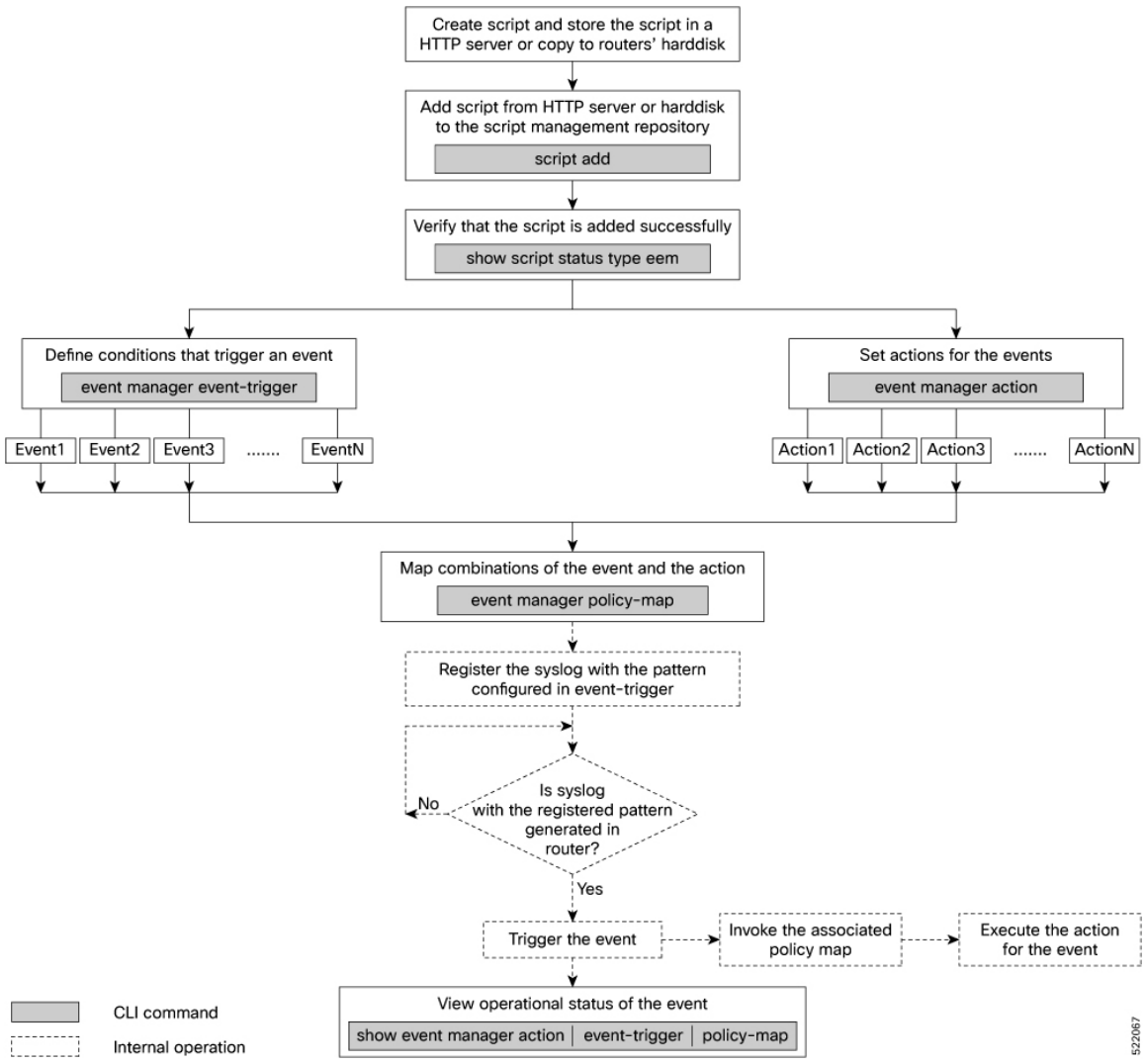
- Download the script—Store the eem script on an HTTP server or copy to the harddisk of the router. Add the eem script from the HTTP server or harddisk to the script management repository on the router using the **script add eem** command.

- Define events—Configure the events with the trigger conditions using the **event manager event-trigger** command.
- Define actions to the events—Setup the actions that must be performed in response to an event using **event manager action** command.
- Create policy map—Put together the events and the actions in a policy map using **event manager policy-map** command.

Note An eem script is invoked automatically when the event occurs. With the event, the event-trigger invokes the corresponding policy-map to implement the actions in response to the event.

- View operational status of the event—Retrieve the operational data using the **show event-manager action | event-trigger | policy-map** command.

The following image shows a workflow diagram representing the steps involved in using an event script:



The following sections cover the steps to run event scripts:

1. Download the Script to the Router
2. Define Trigger Conditions for an Event
3. Create Actions for Events
4. Create a Policy Map of Events and Actions
5. View Operational Status of Event Scripts

Download the Script to the Router

To manage the scripts, you must add the scripts to the script management repository on the router. A subdirectory is created for each script type. By default, this repository stores the downloaded scripts in the appropriate subdirectory based on script type.

Script Type	Download Location
config	harddisk:/mirror/script-mgmt/config
exec	harddisk:/mirror/script-mgmt/exec
process	harddisk:/mirror/script-mgmt/process
eem	harddisk:/mirror/script-mgmt/eem

The scripts are added to the script management repository using two methods:

- **Method 1:** Add script from a server
- **Method 2:** Copy script from external repository to harddisk using **scp** or **copy** command

In this section, you learn how to add `eem-script.py` script to the script management repository.

Procedure

Step 1 Add the script to the script management repository on the router using one of the two options:

- **Add Script From a Server**

  Add the script from a configured HTTP server or the harddisk location in the router.

  ```
  Router#script add eem <script-location> <script.py>
  ```

  The following example shows a process script `eem-script.py` downloaded from an external repository `http://192.0.2.0/scripts`:

  ```
  Router#script add eem http://192.0.2.0/scripts eem-script.py
  Fri Aug 20 05:03:40.791 UTC
  eem-script.py has been added to the script repository
  ```

  You can add a maximum of 10 scripts simultaneously.

  ```
  Router#script add eem <script-location> <script1.py> <script2.py> ... <script10.py>
  ```

  You can also specify the checksum value while downloading the script. This value ensures that the file being copied is genuine. You can fetch the checksum of the script from the server from where you are downloading the script. However, specifying checksum while downloading the script is optional.

  ```
  Router#script add eem http://192.0.2.0/scripts eem-script.py checksum SHA256 <checksum-value>
  ```

  For multiple scripts, use the following syntax to specify the checksum:

  ```
  Router#script add eem http://192.0.2.0/scripts <script1.py> <script1-checksum> <script2.py>
  <script2-checksum>
  ... <script10.py> <script10-checksum>
  ```

  If you specify the checksum for one script, you must specify the checksum for all the scripts that you download.

  Note
  Only SHA256 checksum is supported.

- **Copy the Script from an External Repository**

  You can copy the script from the external repository to the routers' harddisk and then add the script to the script management repository.

a. Copy the script from a remote location to harddisk using scp or copy command.

```
Router#scp userx@192.0.2.0:/scripts/eem-script.py /harddisk:/
```

b. Add the script from the harddisk to the script management repository.

```
Router#script add eem /harddisk:/ eem-script.py
Fri Aug 20 05:03:40.791 UTC
eem-script.py has been added to the script repository
```

Step 2 Verify that the scripts are downloaded to the script management repository on the router.

Example:

```
Router#show script status
Wed Aug 25 23:10:50.453 UTC
=============================================================================================
 Name               | Type     | Status           | Last Action | Action Time
---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------
 eem-script.py      | eem      | Config Checksum  | NEW         | Tue Aug 24 10:44:53 2021
=============================================================================================
```

Script `eem-script.py` is copied to `harddisk:/mirror/script-mgmt/eem` directory on the router.

Define Trigger Conditions for an Event

You define the event, and create a set of instructions that trigger a match to this event. You can create multiple events.

Before you begin

Ensure that the script is added to the script management repository..

Procedure

Step 1 Register the event.

Example:

```
Router(config)#event manager event-trigger eventT10
```

You can configure more options to trigger an event:

Keyword	Description
occurrence	Number of occurrences before the event is raised. **Note** The **occurrence** keyword is supported only for syslog events.
period	Time interval during which configured occurrence should take place. **Note** The **period** keyword is supported only for syslog events.

Keyword	Description

type	Configure the type of event.
	Note
	In Cisco IOS XR Release 7.3.2, you can configure only syslog events.
	• Rate limit—Configure rate limit in seconds or milliseconds. After the event is triggered, the event trigger does not happen even if the event occurs any number of times, till this time has elapsed.
	• Syslog—Configure syslog pattern, severity.
	• Timer—Configure watch dog timer in seconds; cron timer as a text string with five fields separated by a space.
	• Track—Configure event-trigger for track (object tracking), track state (`UP`, `DOWN`, or `ANY`). If event-trigger is configured for track state `UP`, then it gets triggered when the track state changes from `DOWN` to `UP`, and vice-versa.
	• Telemetry—Define events based on telemetry data. With this feature, you can perform the following operations:
	a. Monitor any operational state such as interface status, and trigger an action when the state changes to a specific value.
	b. Monitor any counter or statistics in an operational data, and trigger an action when it reaches a threshold.
	c. Monitor rate of change of any operational attribute, and trigger an action based on threshold.
	Note
	exact match supported on string and threshold or rate limit is supported only for integer type telemetry data
	Configure sensor path for exact match, threshold or rate depending on the telemetry data type. The exact match is supported on string data type, and threshold and rate limit is supported only for interger data type. Use the following command to verify the sensor path or query before configuring the event trigger.
	`Router#event manager telemetry sensor-path <sensor-path> json-query <query>`
	It is mandatory to enable model-driven telemetry using the command:
	`Router#telemetry model-driven`

Step 2 Configure the type for the event.

- Syslog:

```
Router(config)#event manager event-trigger eventT10 type syslog pattern
"L2-BM-6-ACTIVE"
```

For syslog, set the pattern to match. In this example, the pattern `L2-BM-6-ACTIVE` is the match value. If a syslog is generated on the router with a pattern that matches this configured pattern, the event gets triggered.

- Timer:

Watchdog timer—

```
Router(config)#event manager event-trigger  <event-name>
 type timer watchdog value <countdown-timer-value-in-seconds>
```

Cron timer—

```
Router(config)#event manager event-trigger <event-name>
 type timer cron cron-entry "<cron string>"
```

- Track:

```
Router(config)#event manager event-trigger <event-name>
 type track name <track-name> status {up | down | any}
```

- Telemetry:

Match criteria as exact-match—

```
Router(config)#event manager event-trigger <event-name>
 query json-path <query> match-criteria exact-match value <value>
 type telemetry sensor-path <telemetry-sensor-path>
sample-interval <sample-interval-in-seconds>
```

Match criteria as threshold—

```
Router(config)#event manager event-trigger <event-name> query
json-path <query> match-criteria threshold {equal-to | greater-equal-to |
greater-than | less-equal-to | less-than| not-equal-to} <value>
type telemetry sensor-path <telemetry-sensor-path> sample-interval <sample-interval-in-seconds>
```

Match criteria as rate—

```
Router(config)#event manager event-trigger <event-name>
 query json-path <query> match-criteria rate direction {any | decreasing | increasing}
value {equal-to| greater-equal-to | greater-than | less-equal-to | less-than | not-equal-to}
<value>
 type telemetry sensor-path <telemetry-sensor-path> sample-interval <sample-interval-in-seconds>>
```

Example

Example: The following example shows the configuration for syslog event type. If severity is configured, the event gets triggered only if both the syslog severity and the syslog pattern match with the syslog generated on the router. If severity is not configured, it is set to `all`, where only pattern match is considered for the event to trigger.

```
Router(config)#event manager event-trigger eventT10
 type syslog pattern "<pattern-to-match>" severity <value>
```

```
Router(config)#event manager event-trigger eventT10
rate-limit seconds <time-in-seconds>
type syslog pattern "<pattern-to-match>" severity <value>
```

The severity values are:

```
alert      Syslog priority 1
critical   Syslog priority 2
debug      Syslog priority 7 (lowest)
emergency  Syslog priority 0 (highest)
error      Syslog priority 3
```

```
info       Syslog priority 6
notice     Syslog priority 5
warning    Syslog priority 4
```

The following example shows a syslog pattern `L2-BM-6-ACTIVE` with severity value critical:

```
Router(config)#event manager event-trigger eventT10
 type syslog pattern "L2-BM-6-ACTIVE" severity info
```

The event gets triggered, if both the syslog pattern `L2-BM-6-ACTIVE` and severity value `info` match.

Create Actions for Events

Define the actions that must be taken when an event occurs.

Before you begin

Ensure that the following prerequisites are met before you configure the action:

- Define Trigger Conditions for an Event, on page 153

Procedure

Step 1 Set the event action.

Example:

```
Router(config)#event manager action action1
```

Step 2 Define the type of action. For example, the action is a Python script.

Example:

```
Router(config)#event manager action action1 type script action1.py
```

Step 3 Configure the maximum run time of the script for the event.

Example:

```
Router(config)#event manager action action1 type script action1.py maxrun seconds 30
```

The default value is 20 seconds.

Step 4 Configure the checksum for the script. This configuration is mandatory. Every script is associated with a checksum hash value. This value ensures the integrity of the script, and that the script is not tampered. The checksum is a string of numbers and letters that act as a fingerprint for script.

a) Retrieve the SHA256 checksum hash value for the script from the IOS XR Linux bash shell.

Example:

```
Router#run
[node0_RP0_CPU0:~]$sha256sum /harddisk:/mirror/script-mgmt/eem/action1.py
407ce32678a5fc4b0ad49e83acad6453ad1d47e8dad9501cf139daa75d53e3dd
/harddisk:/mirror/script-mgmt/eem/action1.py
```

b) Configure the checksum for the script.

Example:

```
Router(config)#event manager action action1 type script action1.py checksum
sha256 407ce32678a5fc4b0ad49e83acad6453ad1d47e8dad9501cf139daa75d53e3dd
```

Step 5 Enter the username for the script to execute.

Example:

```
Router(config)#event manager action action1 username eem_user
```

Note
If you load the event manager action commands using configuration files, for example, by using the **load harddisk:config.txt** command, you must make sure that the commands in the configuration files are properly indented and aligned with the running configuration.

In this example, the **username eem** and **type script** commands in the **config.txt** configuration file are properly indented and aligned with the running configuration.

```
event manager action action_all
 username eem
 type script script-name eem.py Marx seconds 7200 checksum
sha256fb2e1f7c4b135c296abb7149cf5fb96f052d3876c35a8422d44f78b9b6d3e452
!
```

Create a Policy Map of Events and Actions

Table 19: Feature History Table

Feature Name	Release Information	Description
Add Multiple Events In a Policy Map With a Single EEM Script	Release 7.5.1	With this feature, you can add multiple events to a policy map with boolean (AND or OR) correlation. EEM triggers the script when the correlation defined in the policy map for the events is true. Using EEM scripts, you can create a logical correlation of events in the policy map and configure multiple actions for detectors such as timer, object-tracking, and telemetry events via sensor path.

Create a policy to map events and actions. You can configure a policy that associates multiple actions with an event or use the same action with different events. The policy can be triggered if an event or multiple events occur at a specified number of times within a specified period of time. The `occurrence` and `period` are optional parameters. You can add multiple events to a policy-map with boolean (AND or OR) correlation. EEM triggers the script when correlation defined in the policy-map for the events is true. For example, a multi-event policy-map for `event1` and `event2` with `event1 AND event2` boolean operation is triggered only when both `event1` and `event2` are true.

Before you begin

Ensure that the following prerequisites are met before you create a policy map:

- Define Trigger Conditions for an Event, on page 153
- Create Actions for Events, on page 156

Procedure

Step 1 Create a policy map.

Example:

```
Router(config)#event manager policy-map policy1
```

```
Router(config)#event manager policy-map policy1
 trigger multi-event ["(<event1> AND <event2>) AND (<event3> OR <event4>)" |
 occurrence <count> | period <time in seconds>]
```

Note
Ensure that the operations when configuring multiple events are within double quotes "".

where,

- occurrence: Specifies the number of times the total correlation occurs before an EEM event is raised. If occurrence is not specified, the policy-map gets triggered on every occurrence of the event. The occurance vale ranges from 1 to 32. An occurrence that is configured with multiple events is considered as only one occurrence if the boolean logic operations becomes true.
- period: Time interval in seconds, during which the event occurs. The period must be an integer number between 1 to 429496729 seconds.

Step 2 Define the action that must be implemeted when the event occurs. Maximum of 5 actions can be mapped to a policy map.

Example:

```
Router(config-policy-map)#action action1
```

Step 3 Configure the name of the event or multiple events to trigger the policy-map.

Example:

```
Router(config-policy-map)#trigger event event10
```

The following example shows the policy-map for multiple events:

```
event manager policy-map policy001
 trigger multi-event "event1 OR (event4 AND event2)"
 period 60
 action action2
 occurrence 2
!
```

View Operational Status of Event Scripts

Retrieve the operational status of events, actions and policy maps.

Before you begin

Ensure that the following prerequisites are met before you trigger the event:

- Define Trigger Conditions for an Event, on page 153
- Create Actions for Events, on page 156
- Create a Policy Map of Events and Actions, on page 157

Procedure

Step 1 Run the **show event manager event-trigger all** command to view the summary of basic data of all events that are configured.

Example:

```
Router#show event manager event-trigger all
Tue Aug 24 14:47:35.803 IST
Thu May 20 20:41:03.690 UTC
No. Name    esid   Type    Occurs  Period  Trigger-Count Policy-Count Status
1   event1  1008   syslog  2       1800    4             1            active
2   event2  1009   syslog  2       1800    4             1            active
3   event3  1010   syslog  2       1800    4             1            active
4   event4  1011   syslog  2       1800    4             1            active
5   event5  1012   syslog  2       1800    4             1            active
6   event6  1013   syslog  2       1800    4             1            active
7   event7  1014   syslog  2       1800    4             1            active
8   event8  1015   syslog  2       1800    4             1            active
9   event9  1016   syslog  2       1800    4             1            active
```

Use the **show event manager event-trigger all detailed** command to view the details about the match criteria that you configured, severity level, policies mapped to the events and so on.

Use the **show event manager event-trigger <event-name> detailed** command to view the details about the individual events.

```
Router#show event manager event-trigger event1 detailed
Fri Nov 19 04:21:45.558 UTC

Event trigger name: event1
Event esid: 107
Event type: timer
Event occurrence: NA
Event period: NA
Event rate-limit: NA
Event triggered count: 12861
Event policy reg count: 1
Event status: active
Timer type: watchdog
Timer value: 10

Policy mapping info
1    event1                     policy1
```

Step 2 Run the **show event manager policy-map all** command to view the summary of all the configured policy maps.

Example:

```
Router#show event manager policy-map all
Tue Aug 24 14:48:52.153 IST
```

```
No. Name      Occurs   period    Trigger-Count     Status
1   policy1   NA       NA        1                 active
2   policy2   NA       NA        1                 active
3   policy3   NA       NA        1                 active
4   policy4   NA       NA        1                 active
```

Use the **show event manager policy-map all detailed** command to view the details about mapping of associated events and actions in the policy maps.

```
Router#show event manager policy-map policy1 all detailed
Fri Nov 19 11:35:40.282 UTC

Policy name: policy1
Policy occurrence: 3
Policy period: 120
Policy triggered count: 0
Policy status: active
Multi event policy: FALSE

Events mapped to the policy
No.       Name                          Status
1         event2                        active

Actions mapped to the policy
No.       Name                          Checksum
1         action1                       SHA256
```

Use the **show event manager policy-map <policy-map-name> detailed** command to view the details about the individual policy maps.

```
Router#show event manager policy-map policy1 detailed
Fri Nov 19 11:05:38.828 UTC

Policy name: policy1
Policy occurrence: 2
Policy period: 60
Policy triggered count: 0
Policy status: active
Multi event policy: TRUE
Multi event string : "event1 OR (event4 AND event2)"
Current Correlation State : FALSE

Events mapped to the policy
No.       Name                          Status         Corr Status    Reset time(sec)
1         event1                        active         0              0
2         event2                        active         0              0
3         event4                        active         0              0

Actions mapped to the policy
No.       Name                          Checksum
1         action2                       SHA256
```

Step 3 Run the **show event manager action <action-name> detailed** commad to view the details of an action.

Example:

```
Router#show event manager action action1 detailed
Tue Aug 24 16:05:44.298 UTC

Action name: action1
Action type: script
EEM Script name: event_script_1.py
Action triggered count: 1
Action policy count: 1
Username: eem_user
```

```
Checksum: 407ce32678a5fc4b0ad49e83acad6453ad1d47e8dad9501cf139daa75d53e3dd
Last execution status: Success

Policy mapping info
1    action1                      policy1
```

Use the **show event manager action all** and **show event manager action all detailed** command to view the summary and details about all the configured actions.

Example: Shut Inactive Bundle Interfaces Using EEM Script

In this example, you use an EEM event to look for a syslog message and trigger a Python script. The script does two things:

- Triggers an event on the interface inactive log as part of Bundle-Ether1, and shuts down the interface.
- Runs the **show tech-support bundles** command to collect debug data.

Procedure

Step 1 Create an eem script `event_script_action_bundle_shut.py`. Store the script on an HTTP server or copy the script to the harddisk of the router.

Example:

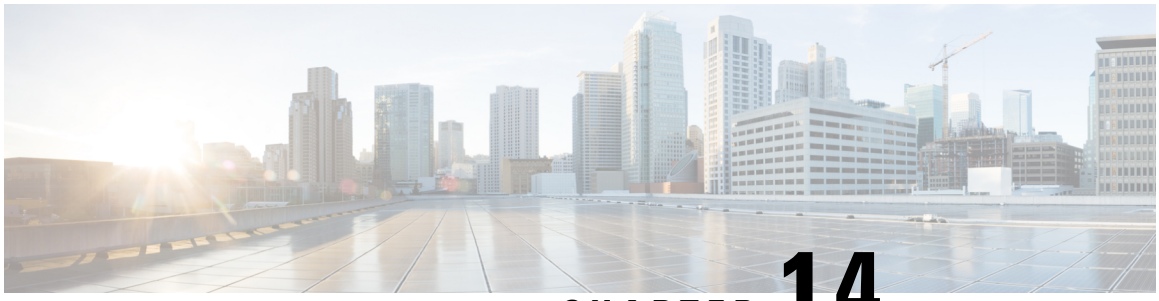
```
from iosxr.xrcli.xrcli_helper import *
from cisco.script_mgmt import xrlog

logger = xrlog.getScriptLogger('sample_script')
syslog = xrlog.getSysLogger('sample_script')
helper = XrcliHelper(debug = True)

syslog.info('Execution of event manager action script event_script_action_bundle_shut.py started')

config = """interface Bundle-Ether1
shutdown"""

cmd = "show tech-support bundles"

if __name__ == '__main__':
  res = helper.xr_apply_config_string(config)
  if res['status'] == 'success':
     syslog.info('OPS_EVENT_SCRIPT_ACTION : Configuration succeeded')
  else:
     syslog.error('OPS_EVENT_SCRIPT_ACTION : Configuration failed')

  res = helper.xrcli_exec(cmd)
  if res['status'] == 'success':
     syslog.info('OPS_EVENT_SCRIPT_ACTION : show tech started')
  else:
     syslog.error('OPS_EVENT_SCRIPT_ACTION : show tech failed')

  syslog.info('Execution of event manager action script event_script_action_bundle_shut.py ended')
```

Step 2 Add the script from HTTP server or harddisk to the script management repository..

Step 3 After the configured type matches the syslog pattern, the script is triggered in response to the detected event. You can view the running configuration for the event manager.

Example:

```
Router#show running-config event manager
Mon Aug 30 06:23:32.974 UTC
event manager action action1
 username eem_user
  type script script-name eem_script_bundle_shut.py maxrun seconds 600 checksum sha256
2386d8f71b2d6f6f6e77a7a39d3b4d38cca07f9eaf2a4de7cd40c1b027a4e248
!
event manager policy-map policy1
 trigger event event1
  action action1
!
 event manager event-trigger event1
  type syslog pattern "%L2-BM-6-ACTIVE : FortyGigE0/0/0/13 is no longer Active as part of Bundle-Ether1"
!
```



CHAPTER 14

Model-Driven Command-Line Interface

This section shows the CLI commands that are based on YANG data models and can be used on the router console.

- Model-Driven CLI to Display Data Model Structure, on page 163
- Model-Driven CLI to Display Running Configuration in XML and JSON Formats, on page 167

Model-Driven CLI to Display Data Model Structure

Cisco IOS XR Software provides a rich set of show commands and data models to access data from the router and network. The show commands present unstructured data, whereas data models are structured data that can be encoded in XML or JSON formats. However, both the access points do not always present the same view. Network operators who work on show commands face challenges with adopting the data models when transitioning to programmatic interfaces.

With this feature, these adoption challenges are overcome using **show yang operational** command that is driven by data models. The command uses the data model as the base to display the structured data using traditional CLI command. Using this command, you can simplify parsing scripts via XML and JSON formats.

A data model has a structured hierarchy: model, module, container, and leaf. The following example shows the structure of `ietf-interfaces.yang` data model:

```
ietf-interfaces.yang
module: ietf-interfaces
  +--rw interfaces
  |  +--rw interface* [name]
  |     +--rw name                          string
  |     +--rw description?                  string
  |     +--rw type                          identityref
  |     +--rw enabled?                      boolean
  |     +--rw link-up-down-trap-enable?     enumeration {if-mib}?
  +--ro interfaces-state
        +--ro interface* [name]
        +--ro name                string
        +--ro type                identityref
        +--ro admin-status        enumeration {if-mib}
```

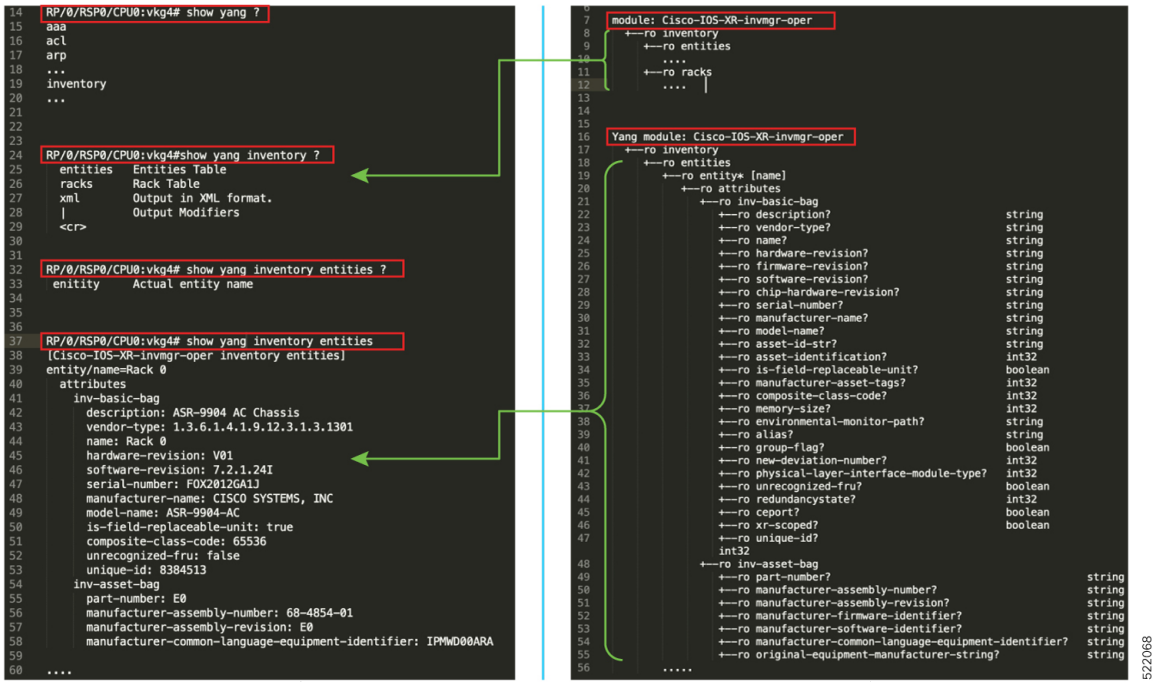
In the example, the hierarchy of the data model is as follows:

- Model—ietf-interfaces.yang
- Module—ietf-interfaces
- Container—interfaces, interface-state

- Node—interface* [name]
- Leaf—name, description, type, enabled, link-up-down-trap-enable, admin-status

You can use the **show yang operational** command to navigate to the leaf level as you do in a data model.

The image show a mapping between CLI and data model, and how the structured data is displayed on the console.



The table shows various queries that can be used to navigate through the hierarchy of a data model using the CLI command. The queries are demonstrated using `Cisco-IOS-XR-interfaces-oper.yang` data model as an example.

Operational Query	Description

Search specific top-level nodes	Search and produce the output of keywords from top-level nodes.
	`Router#show yang operational`
	`Router#show yang operational | include <component>`
	The following example shows the search result for interfaces:
	`Router#show yang operational | include interface`
	`Wed Jul 7 00:02:37.982 PDT`
	`drivers-media-eth-oper:ethernet-interface`
	`ifmgr-oper:interface-dampening`
	`ifmgr-oper:interface-properties`
	`interface-cem-oper:cem`
	`l2vpn-oper:generic-interface-list-v2`
	`pfi-im-cmd-oper:interfaces`

Operational Query	Description

All the instances of the container	Lists all the models at the root level container and its container name.
	`Router#show yang operational ?`
	You can also see the containers for a partially typed keyword. For example, keyword search for `mpls-` displays all the containers with `mpls` :
	`Router#show yang operational mpls-`
	`mpls-io-oper-mpls-ea mpls-io-oper-mpls-ma`
	`mpls-ldp-mldp-oper:mpls-mldp`
	`mpls-lsd-oper:mpls-lsd mpls-lsp-oper:mpls-lsd-nodes`
	`mpls-ldp-mldp-oper:mpls-mldp`
	`mpls-vpn-oper:l3vpn mpls-te-oper:mpls-tp`
	`mpls-te-oper:mpls-te`
	View the container data. The output of the command is in-line with the structure of the data model.
	`Router#show yang operational mpls-static-oper:mpls-static`
	`Request datatree:`
	`filter`
	`mpls-static (ka)`
	`{`
	`"Cisco-IOS-XR-mpls-static-oper:mpls-static": {`
	`"vrfs": {`
	`"vrf": [`
	`{`
	`"vrf-name": "default"`
	`}`
	`]`
	`},`
	`"summary": {`
	`"lsp-count": 0,`
	`"label-count": 0,`
	`"label-error-count": 0,`
	`"label-discrepancy-count": 0,`
	`"vrf-count": 1,`
	`"active-vrf-count": 1,`
	`"interface-count": 0,`
	`"interface-forward-reference-count": 0,`
	`"lsd-connected": true,`
	`"ribv4-connected": false,`
	`"ribv6-connected": false`
	`}`
	`}`
	`}`

Operational Query	Description

All the nodes of the container	`Router#show yang operational mpls-static-oper:mpls-static ?`
	`JSON Output in JSON format`
	`XML Output in XML format`
	`local-labels`
	`summary`
	`vrfs`
	`| Output Modifiers`
	`<cr>`
	Output in JSON Format:
	`Router#show yang operational man-netconf-oper:netconf-yang clients JSON`
	`Mon Sep 27 11:38:27.158 PST`
	`Request datatree:`
	`filter`
	`netconf-yang (ka)`
	`clients`
	`{`
	`"Cisco-IOS-XR-man-netconf-oper:netconf-yang": {`
	`"clients": {`
	`"client": [`
	`{`
	`"session-id": "1396267443",`
	`"version": "1.1",`
	`"connect-time": "52436839",`
	`"last-op-time": "1545",`
	`"last-op-type": "get",`
	`"locked": "No"`
	`}`
	`]`
	`}`
	`}`
	`}`
	Output in XML Format:
	`Router#show yang operational man-netconf-oper:netconf-yang clients XML`
	`Mon Sep 27 11:38:34.218 PST`
	`Request datatree:`
	`filter`
	`netconf-yang (ka)`
	`clients`
	`<netconf-yang`
	`xmlns="http://cisco.com/ns/yang/Cisco-IOS-XR-man-netconf-oper">`
	`<clients>`
	`<client>`
	`<session-id>1396267443</session-id>`
	`<version>1.1</version>`
	`<connect-time>52443884</connect-time>`
	`<last-op-time>1545</last-op-time>`
	`<last-op-type>get</last-op-type>`
	`<locked>No</locked>`
	`</client>`
	`</clients>`
	`</netconf-yang>`

Operational Query	Description

Navigate until the last leaf level	`Router#show yang operational mpls-static-oper:mpls-static summary ?`
	`JSON Output in JSON format`
	`XML Output in XML format`
	`active-vrf-count`
	`im-connected`
	`interface-count`
	`interface-forward-reference-count`
	`mpls-enbled-interface-count`
	`vrf-count`
	`| Output Modifiers`
	`<cr>`
	View data specific to the leaf value. The `read only` (ro) leaves in a YANG model are considered as the state data (operational).
	`Router#show yang operational mpls-static-oper:mpls-static summary active-vrf-count`
	`Request datatree:`
	`filter`
	`mpls-static (ka)`
	`summary`
	`active-vrf-count`
	`{`
	`"Cisco-IOS-XR-mpls-static-oper:mpls-static": {`
	`"summary": {`
	`"active-vrf-count": [`
	`}`
	`}`
	`}`

Model-Driven CLI to Display Running Configuration in XML and JSON Formats

The **show run | [xml | json]** command uses native, OpenConfig and unified models to retrieve and display data.

Use the following variations of the command to generate output:

- **show run | [xml | json]**—Shows configuration in YANG XML or JSON tree.
- **show run | [xml | json] openconfig**—Shows configuration in OpenConfig YANG XML tree.
- **show run | [xml | json] unified**—Shows configuration in unified model YANG XML tree.
- **show run** *component* **| [xml | json]**—Shows configuration in YANG XML or JSON tree for the top-level component. For example, **show run interface | xml**
- **show run** *component* **| [xml | json] unified**—Shows configuration in unified model YANG XML or JSON tree for the top-level component. For example, **show run interface | json unified**
- **show run** *component subcomponent* **| [xml | json]**—Shows configuration in YANG XML or JSON tree for the granular-level component. For example, **show run router bgp 12 neighbor 12.12.12.12 | xml**

- **show run** *component subcomponent* **| [xml | json] unified**—Shows configuration in unified model YANG XML or JSON tree for the granular-level component. For example, **show run router bgp 12 neighbor 12.12.12.12 | json unified**

XML Output

```
Router#show run | xml
Building configuration...
 <data>
  <interface-configurations xmlns="http://cisco.com/ns/yang/Cisco-IOS-XR-ifmgr-cfg">
   <interface-configuration>
    <active>act</active>
    <interface-name>GigabitEthernet0/0/0/0</interface-name>
    <shutdown></shutdown>
   </interface-configuration>
   <interface-configuration>
    <active>act</active>
    <interface-name>GigabitEthernet0/0/0/1</interface-name>
    <shutdown></shutdown>
   </interface-configuration>
   <interface-configuration>
    <active>act</active>
    <interface-name>GigabitEthernet0/0/0/2</interface-name>
    <shutdown></shutdown>
   </interface-configuration>
  </interface-configurations>
  <interfaces xmlns="http://cisco.com/ns/yang/Cisco-IOS-XR-um-interface-cfg">
   <interface>
    <interface-name>GigabitEthernet0/0/0/0</interface-name>
    <shutdown/>
   </interface>
   <interface>
    <interface-name>GigabitEthernet0/0/0/1</interface-name>
    <shutdown/>
   </interface>
   <interface>
    <interface-name>GigabitEthernet0/0/0/2</interface-name>
    <shutdown/>
   </interface>
  </interfaces>
 </data>
```

JSON Output

```
Router#show run | json
Building configuration...
{
  "data": {
    "Cisco-IOS-XR-ifmgr-cfg:interface-configurations": {
       "interface-configuration": [
   {
      "active": "act",
      "interface-name": "GigabitEthernet0/0/0/0",
      "shutdown": [
          null
             ]
           },
           {
      "active": "act",
      "interface-name": "GigabitEthernet0/0/0/1",
      "shutdown": [
          null
      ]
     },
```

```
     {
      "active": "act",
      "interface-name": "GigabitEthernet0/0/0/2",
      "shutdown": [
          null
      ]
     }
   ],
 "Cisco-IOS-XR-man-netconf-cfg:netconf-yang": {
    "agent": {
      "ssh": true
     }
 },
 }
```

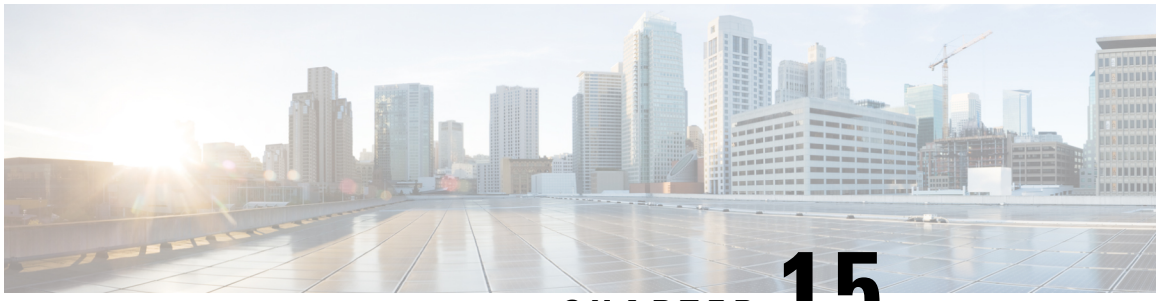
Granular-Level Component Output

```
Router#sh run router bgp 12 neighbor 12.12.12.12 | json unified
{
 "data": {
  "Cisco-IOS-XR-um-router-bgp-cfg:router": {
   "bgp": {
    "as": [
     {
      "as-number": 12,
      "neighbors": {
       "neighbor": [
        {
         "neighbor-address": "12.12.12.12",
         "remote-as": 12,
         "address-families": {
          "address-family": [
           {
            "af-name": "ipv4-unicast"
           }
          ]
         }
        }
       ]
      }
     }
    ]
   }
  }
 }
}
```

Unified Model Output

```
Router#sh run router bgp 12 | xml unified
<data>
 <router xmlns=http://cisco.com/ns/yang/Cisco-IOS-XR-um-router-bgp-cfg>
  <bgp>
   <as>
    <as-number>12</as-number>
    <bgp>
     <router-id>1.1.1.1</router-id>
    </bgp>
    <address-families>
     <address-family>
      <af-name>ipv4-unicast</af-name>
     </address-family>
    </address-families>
    <neighbors>
     <neighbor>
```

```
      <neighbor-address>12.12.12.12</neighbor-address>
      <remote-as>12</remote-as>
      <address-families>
       <address-family>
        <af-name>ipv4-unicast</af-name>
       </address-family>
      </address-families>
     </neighbor>
    </neighbors>
   </as>
  </bgp>
 </router>
</data>
```



CHAPTER 15

Manage Automation Scripts Using YANG RPCs

You can use automation scripts to interact with the router using NETCONF, helper modules or gNMI python modules.

An SSH session must be established between the client and the server to run RPCs on a device. The client can be a script or application that runs as part of a network manager. The server is a network device such as a router. To enable the NETCONF SSH agent, use the following commands:

```
ssh server v2
netconf agent tty
```

After a NETCONF session is established, the client sends one or more RPC requests to the server. The server processes the requests and sends an RPC response back to the client. For example, the get-config operation retrieves the configuration of the device and the edit-config operation edits the configuration on the device.

For more information about data models and how to use the models

- Manage Common Script Actions Using YANG RPCs, on page 171
- Manage Exec Scripts Using RPCs, on page 174
- Manage EEM Script Using RPCs, on page 177

Manage Common Script Actions Using YANG RPCs

Table 20: Feature History Table

Feature Name	Release Information	Description
Manage Common Script Actions Using YANG RPCs	Release 7.5.1	This feature enables you to use YANG remote procedure calls (RPCs) on `Cisco-IOS-XR-infra-script-mgmt-act.yang` data model to perform actions on the automation scripts such as add or remove script from the script repository, run, or stop script from running.

This section provides information about YANG RPC messages for common actions on automation scripts. The `Cisco-IOS-XR-infra-script-mgmt-act.yang` action YANG model is enhanced to perform the actions such as adding or removing a script from the repository, and also include output responses. The output response

provides a description about the action and displays the status as `True` for a successful action, and `False` for a failed action.

The YANG RPC supports these scripts:

- Config
- Exec
- Process
- EEM

The following section shows the various script actions, sample RPC request, and RPC response.

Add Script

You can add up to a maximum of 10 scripts to the script repository. You can set the script type to config, exec, process, or eem. The following example shows the RPC to add the exec script to the repository:

```
<add xmlns="http://cisco.com/ns/yang/Cisco-IOS-XR-infra-script-mgmt-act">
<script-type>exec</script-type>
<vrf></vrf>
<source>/harddisk:/</source>
<script-name>sample.py</script-name>
</add>
```

You can add more than one script to the repository simultaneously:

```
<add xmlns="http://cisco.com/ns/yang/Cisco-IOS-XR-infra-script-mgmt-act">
<script-type>exec</script-type>
<source>/harddisk:/</source>
<script-name>sample2.py</script-name>
<script-name>sample3.py</script-name>
</add>
```

To add a checksum value to the script, use the following RPC request:

```
<add-checksum xmlns="http://cisco.com/ns/yang/Cisco-IOS-XR-infra-script-mgmt-act">
<script-type>exec</script-type>
<source>/harddisk:/</source>
<script-checksums>
    <script-name>sample.py</script-name>
<checksum>e3b0c44298fc1c149afbf4c8996fb92427ae41e4649b934ca495991b7852b855</checksum>
</script-checksums>
</add-checksum>
```

You can add more than one script with their checksum values:

```
<add-checksum xmlns="http://cisco.com/ns/yang/Cisco-IOS-XR-infra-script-mgmt-act">
<script-type>exec</script-type>
<source>/harddisk:/</source>
<script-checksums>
    <script-name>sample.py</script-name>
<checksum>e3b0c44298fc1c149afbf4c8996fb92427ae41e4649b934ca495991b7852b855</checksum>
</script-checksums>
<script-checksums>
    <script-name>sample2.py</script-name>
<checksum>e3b0c44298fc1c149afbf4c8996fb92427ae41e4649b934ca495991b7852b855</checksum>
</script-checksums>
</add-checksum>
```

Remove Script

To remove script from the repository, provide the script type and the script name. You can send an RPC request to remove up to 10 scripts.

```
<remove xmlns="http://cisco.com/ns/yang/Cisco-IOS-XR-infra-script-mgmt-act">
<script-type>exec</script-type>
<script-name>sample.py</script-name>
</remove>
```

You can remove more than one script simultaneously:

```
<remove xmlns="http://cisco.com/ns/yang/Cisco-IOS-XR-infra-script-mgmt-act">
<script-type>exec</script-type>
<script-name>sample2.py</script-name>
<script-name>sample3.py</script-name>
</remove>
```

The following example shows a sample RPC response indicating that the script `sample1.py` is removed from the repository:

```
<responses>
<script-name>sample.py<script-name>
 <response>sample.py has been removed from the script repository</response>
<status>True</status>
<responses>
```

Stop Script

You must provide the request ID for the script instance to be stopped.

```
<stop xmlns="http://cisco.com/ns/yang/Cisco-IOS-XR-infra-script-mgmt-act">
<request-id>1622058854</request-id>
<description></description>
</stop>
```

The following example shows that the script has stopped:

```
<script-stop-response>
           <response></response>
           <status>True</status>
</script-stop-response>
```

Run Script

You must provide the script name to run the script. You can also configure the log levels to one of these values—Critical, Debug, Error, Info, or Warning.

```
<run xmlns="http://cisco.com/ns/yang/Cisco-IOS-XR-infra-script-mgmt-act">
    <script-name>sample.py</script-name>
    <argument-list></ argument-list>
    <description></description>
    <log-level></log-level>
    <log-path></log-path>
    <max-runtime></max-runtime>
</run>
```

The following example shows a sample RPC response where the script with the request ID `1622058854` is run:

```
<script-run-response>
 <response>Script run scheduled</response>
 <request-id>1622058854</request-id>
 <status>True</status>
</script-run-response>
```

Manage Exec Scripts Using RPCs

The following data models support exec scripts:

- Edit or get configuration—Cisco-IOS-XR-infra-script-mgmt-cfg.yang
- Perform action—Cisco-IOS-XR-infra-script-mgmt-act.yang
- Retrieve operational data—Cisco-IOS-XR-infra-script-mgmt-oper.yang

This section provides examples of using RPC messages on exec scripts, and also the YANG data model and equivalent CLI command to perform the tasks:

Add Script

You use data model to add an exec script from an external repository to the `harddisk:/mirror/script-mgmt/exec` script management repository on the router.

YANG Data Model	Equivalent CLI
Cisco-IOS-XR-infra-script-mgmt-act.yang	**script add exec** *script-location script.py* See.

RPC Request:

```
<rpc xmlns="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:netconf:base:1.0" message-id="101">
  <script-add-type-source xmlns="http://cisco.com/ns/yang/Cisco-IOS-XR-infra-script-mgmt-act">
    <type>exec</type>
    <source>/harddisk:</source>
    <file-name-1>sample1.py</file-name-1>
  </script-add-type-source>
</rpc>
```

Syslog:

```
Router: script_manager[66762]: %OS-SCRIPT_MGMT-6-INFO :
Script-script_manager: sample1.py has been added to the script repository
```

Configure Checksum

Every script is associated with a checksum value for integrity. You can configure the checksum using data models.

YANG Data Model	Equivalent CLI
Cisco-IOS-XR-infra-script-mgmt-act.yang	**script exec** *sample1.py* **checksum SHA256** *checksum-value* See, .

RPC Request:

```
<rpc xmlns:nc="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:netconf:base:1.0"
message-id="urn:uuid:16fa22ed-3f46-4369-806a-3bccd1aefcaf">
  <nc:edit-config>
    <nc:target>
      <nc:candidate/>
```

```
    </nc:target>
    <nc:config>
      <scripts xmlns="http://cisco.com/ns/yang/Cisco-IOS-XR-infra-script-mgmt-cfg">
        <exec-script>
          <scripts>
            <script>
              <script-name>sample1.py</script-name>
              <checksum>
                <checksum-type>sha256</checksum-type>

<checksum>5103a843032505decc37ff21089336e4bcc6a1061341056ca8add3ac5d6620ef</checksum>
              </checksum>
            </script>
          </scripts>
        </exec-script>
      </scripts>
    </nc:config>
  </nc:edit-config>
</nc:rpc>
```

RPC Response:

```
<?xml version="1.0" ?>
<rpc-reply message-id="urn:uuid:16fa22ed-3f46-4369-806a-3bccd1aefcaf"
xmlns="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:netconf:base:1.0"
xmlns:nc="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:netconf:base:1.0">
  <ok/>
</rpc-reply>
```

Run Script

YANG Data Model	Equivalent CLI
Cisco-IOS-XR-infra-script-mgmt-act.yang	**script run** *sample1.py*

RPC Request:

```
<rpc xmlns="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:netconf:base:1.0" message-id="101">
  <script-run xmlns="http://cisco.com/ns/yang/Cisco-IOS-XR-infra-script-mgmt-act">
    <name>sample1.py</name>
  </script-run>
</rpc>
```

RPC Response:

```
<?xml version="1.0" ?>
<rpc-reply message-id="urn:uuid:d54247c7-cf29-42f2-bfb8-517d6458f77c" xmlns="urn:ietf:
params:xml:ns:netconf:base:1.0" xmlns:nc="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:netconf:base:1.0">
  <ok/>
</rpc-reply>
```

Syslog:

```
Router: UTC: script_control_cli[67858]: %OS-SCRIPT_MGMT-6-INFO : Script-control:
Script run scheduled: sample1.py. Request ID: 1631795207
Router: script_agent_main[248]: %OS-SCRIPT_MGMT-6-INFO : Script-script_agent: Script
execution sample1.py (exec) Started : Request ID : 1631795207 :: PID: 18710
```

Stop Script

YANG Data Model	Equivalent CLI
Cisco-IOS-XR-infra-script-mgmt-act.yang	**script stop** *value [short-decription]*

```
<rpc xmlns="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:netconf:base:1.0" message-id="101">
  <script-stop-request xmlns="http://cisco.com/ns/yang/Cisco-IOS-XR-infra-script-mgmt-act">
    <request>1614930988</request>
  </script-stop-request>
</rpc>
```

Remove Script

You can remove scripts from the script management repository. The data about script management and execution history is not deleted when the script is removed.

YANG Data Model	Equivalent CLI
Cisco-IOS-XR-infra-script-mgmt-act.yang	**script remove exec** *script.py* See,.

```
<rpc xmlns="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:netconf:base:1.0" message-id="101">
  <script-remove-type xmlns="http://cisco.com/ns/yang/Cisco-IOS-XR-infra-script-mgmt-act">
    <type>exec</type>
    <file-name-1>load_modules_ut.py</file-name-1>
  </script-remove-type>
</rpc>
```

Show Script Execution

View the status of the script execution.

YANG Data Model	Equivalent CLI
Cisco-IOS-XR-infra-script-mgmt-oper.yang	**show script execution** *[request-id <value>] [name <filename>] [status {Exception | Executed | Killed | Started | Stopped | Timed-out}] [reverse] [last <number>]*

RPC Request:

```
-------------- Sent to NETCONF Agent ---------------
<rpc xmlns:nc="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:netconf:base:1.0"
message-id="urn:uuid:7fd0d184-0004-4a51-9765-d29bc94c793b">
  <get>
    <filter>
      <script xmlns="http://cisco.com/ns/yang/Cisco-IOS-XR-infra-script-mgmt-oper">
        <execution>
          <requests>
            <request>
              <request-id>1631795207</request-id>
              <detail>
                <execution-detail/>
              </detail>
            </request>
          </requests>
        </execution>
      </script>
    </filter>
  </get>
</rpc>
```

RPC Response:

```
----------------- Received from NETCONF agent --------------------
<?xml version="1.0" ?>
<rpc-reply message-id="urn:uuid:7fd0d184-0004-4a51-9765-d29bc94c793b"
xmlns="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:netconf:base:1.0"
xmlns:nc="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:netconf:base:1.0">
  <data>
    <script xmlns="http://cisco.com/ns/yang/Cisco-IOS-XR-infra-script-mgmt-oper">
      <execution>
        <requests>
          <request>
            <request-id>1631795207</request-id>
            <detail>
              <execution-detail>
                <execution-summary>
                  <request-id>1631795207</request-id>
                  <return-val>0</return-val>
                  <script-type>exec</script-type>
                  <script-name>sample1.py</script-name>
                  <duration>60.65s</duration>
                  <event-time>Thu Sep 16 12:26:46 2021</event-time>
                  <status>Executed</status>
                </execution-summary>
                <execution-detail>

<log-path>/harddisk:/mirror/script-mgmt/logs/sample1.py_exec_1631795207</log-path>
                  <run-options>Logging level - INFO, Max. Runtime - 300s, Mode -
Background</run-options>
                </execution-detail>
                <execution-event>
                  <description>None</description>
                  <duration>0.00s</duration>
                  <event>New</event>
                  <time>Thu Sep 16 12:26:46 2021</time>
                </execution-event>
                <execution-event>
                  <description>Script execution started. PID (18710)</description>
                  <duration>0.03s</duration>
                  <event>Started</event>
                  <time>Thu Sep 16 12:26:46 2021</time>
                </execution-event>
                <execution-event>
                  <description>Script execution complete</description>
                  <duration>60.65s</duration>
                  <event>Executed</event>
                  <time>Thu Sep 16 12:27:47 2021</time>
                </execution-event>
              </execution-detail>
            </detail>
          </request>
        </requests>
      </execution>
    </script>
  </data>
</rpc-reply>
```

Manage EEM Script Using RPCs

The following data model supports eem scripts:

- Edit configuration—Cisco-IOS-XR-um-event-manager-policy-map-cfg.yang

The model is augmented to `Cisco-IOS-XR-um-event-manager-cfg.yang` data model.

This section provides examples of using RPC messages on eem scripts, and also the YANG data model and equivalent CLI command to perform the tasks:

Define Actions for Events Using Data Model

You use data model to create actions for events.

YANG Data Model	Equivalent CLI
Cisco-IOS-XR-um-event-manager-policy-map-cfg	**event manager event-trigger** *event-name* **occurance** *value* **period seconds** *value* **period seconds** *value***type syslog pattern** *"syslog-pattern"* **severity** *syslog-severity* See **event manager action** *action-name* **username** *username* **type script script-name** *python-script-name.py* **maxrun seconds** *value* **checksum sha256** *checksum-value* See.

RPC Request:

```
<rpc xmlns="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:netconf:base:1.0" message-id="101">
  <edit-config>
   <target>
    <candidate/>
   </target>
   <config>
    <event xmlns="http://cisco.com/ns/yang/Cisco-IOS-XR-um-event-manager-cfg">
     <manager>
      <event-trigger
xmlns="http://cisco.com/ns/yang/Cisco-IOS-XR-um-event-manager-policy-map-cfg">
       <event>
        <event-name>event_1</event-name>
        <occurrence>2</occurrence>
        <period>
         <seconds>60</seconds>
        </period>
        <type>
         <syslog>
          <pattern>"Syslog for EEM script"</pattern>
          <severity>
           <warning/>
          </severity>
         </syslog>
        </type>
       </event>
      </event-trigger>
   <actions xmlns="http://cisco.com/ns/yang/Cisco-IOS-XR-um-event-manager-policy-map-cfg">

      <action>
```

```
       <action-name>action_1</action-name>
        <type>
         <script>
          <script-name>event_script_1.py</script-name>
          <maxrun>
           <seconds>30</seconds>
          </maxrun>
          <checksum>
         <sha256>bb19a7a286db72aa7c7bd75ad5f224eea1062b7cdaaeee06f11f0f86f976831d</sha256>

          </checksum>
         </script>
        </type>
       <username>eem_user_1</username>
      </action>
     </actions>
    </manager>
   </event>
  </config>
 </edit-config>
</rpc>
<rpc xmlns="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:netconf:base:1.0" message-id="102">
<commit>
</rpc>
```

RPC Response:

```
<?xml version="1.0" ?>
<rpc-reply message-id="urn:uuid:16fa22ed-3f46-4369-806a-3bccd1aefcaf"
xmlns="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:
netconf:base:1.0" xmlns:nc="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:netconf:base:1.0">
  <ok/>
</rpc-reply>
```

Create Policy Map for Events and Actions Using Data Model

You use data model to create actions for events.

YANG Data Model	Equivalent CLI
Cisco-IOS-XR-um-event-manager-policy-map-cfg	**event manager policy-map** *policy-name* **action** *action-name* **trigger event** *event-name* See, .

RPC Request:

```
<rpc xmlns="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:netconf:base:1.0" message-id="101">
 <edit-config>
 <target>
  <candidate/>
  </target>
 <config>
 <event xmlns="http://cisco.com/ns/yang/Cisco-IOS-XR-um-event-manager-cfg">
 <manager>
  <policy-maps xmlns="http://cisco.com/ns/yang/Cisco-IOS-XR-um-event-manager-policy-map-cfg">

      <policy-map>
       <policy-map-name>policy_1</policy-map-name>
       <trigger>
        <event>event_1</event>
```

```
      </trigger>
      <actions>
      <action>
        <action-name>action_1</action-name>
      </action>
     </actions>
    </policy-map>
   </policy-maps>
   </manager>
  </config>
  </edit-config>
</rpc>

<rpc xmlns="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:netconf:base:1.0" message-id="102">
  <commit/>
</rpc>
```

RPC Response:

```
<?xml version="1.0" ?>
<rpc-reply message-id="urn:uuid:16fa22ed-3f46-4369-806a-3bccd1aefcaf"
xmlns="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:
netconf:base:1.0" xmlns:nc="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:netconf:base:1.0">
  <ok/>
</rpc-reply>
```

Operational Model for EEM Script

Table 21: Feature History Table

Feature Name	Release Information	Description
Operational Data Model for EEM Script	Release 7.5.2	You can programmatically retrieve the operational status of events, actions, and policy maps using the YANG data model. In earlier releases, you used the `show event manager` command to view the operational status of event scripts. This release introduces `Cisco-IOS-XR-ha-eem-policy-oper.yang` and `Cisco-IOS-XR-event-manager-policy-map-oper.yang` data models.

Operational Data Model to Retrieve Actions

You use data model to view the details of an action. IOS XR actions are RPC statements that trigger an operation or execute a command on the router. This action is executed when the router receives the corresponding NETCONF RPC request. Once the router executes an action, it replies with a NETCONF RPC response.

YANG Data Model	Equivalent Command
Cisco-IOS-XR-ha-eem-policy-oper	**show event manager action** *action-name* **detailed** See, View Operational Status of Event Scripts, on page 158.

RPC Request:

```
<rpc xmlns:nc="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:netconf:base:1.0"
message-id="urn:uuid:62b9e81b-5d9e-44f6-8a5d-d193a0f8b3d3">
  <get>
    <filter>
      <eem xmlns="http://cisco.com/ns/yang/Cisco-IOS-XR-ha-eem-policy-oper">
        <action-names
xmlns="http://cisco.com/ns/yang/Cisco-IOS-XR-event-manager-policy-map-oper">
          <action-name>
            <action-name>action2</action-name>
          </action-name>
        </action-names>
      </eem>
    </filter>
  </get>
</rpc>
```

RPC Response:

```
<?xml version="1.0" ?>
<rpc-reply message-id="urn:uuid:62b9e81b-5d9e-44f6-8a5d-d193a0f8b3d3"
xmlns="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:netconf:base:1.0"
xmlns:nc="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:netconf:base:1.0">
  <data>
    <eem xmlns="http://cisco.com/ns/yang/Cisco-IOS-XR-ha-eem-policy-oper">
      <action-names
xmlns="http://cisco.com/ns/yang/Cisco-IOS-XR-event-manager-policy-map-oper">
        <action-name>
          <action-name>action2</action-name>
          <action-name-xr>action2</action-name-xr>
          <script-name>event_script_2.py</script-name>
          <action-type>script</action-type>
          <triggered-count>7</triggered-count>
          <policy-count>1</policy-count>
          <max-run>20</max-run>
          <checksum-enabled>SHA256</checksum-enabled>
          <last-run-status>Success</last-run-status>
          <user-name>eem_user</user-name>

<checksum-string>270b9730e77c9bd6f5784084ed21e29d8d7b8edaf8f98a4513879a1631c493ad</checksum-string>

          <action-policy-map>
            <policy-name>policy3</policy-name>
          </action-policy-map>
        </action-name>
      </action-names>
    </eem>
  </data>
</rpc-reply>
```

Operational Data Model to Retrieve Policy Map

You use data model to view the details of a policy map.

YANG Data Model	Equivalent Command
Cisco-IOS-XR-ha-eem-policy-oper	**show event manager policy-map** *policy-name* **detailed** See, View Operational Status of Event Scripts, on page 158.

RPC Request:

```
<rpc xmlns:nc="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:netconf:base:1.0"
message-id="urn:uuid:3cec3f3a-395b-4763-b1a1-1053149da60c">
  <get>
    <filter>
      <eem xmlns="http://cisco.com/ns/yang/Cisco-IOS-XR-ha-eem-policy-oper">
        <policy-map-names
xmlns="http://cisco.com/ns/yang/Cisco-IOS-XR-event-manager-policy-map-oper">
          <policy-map-name>
            <policy-name>policy4</policy-name>
          </policy-map-name>
        </policy-map-names>
      </eem>
    </filter>
  </get>
</rpc>
```

RPC Response:

```
<?xml version="1.0" ?>
<rpc-reply message-id="urn:uuid:3cec3f3a-395b-4763-b1a1-1053149da60c"
xmlns="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:netconf:base:1.0"
xmlns:nc="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:netconf:base:1.0">
  <data>
    <eem xmlns="http://cisco.com/ns/yang/Cisco-IOS-XR-ha-eem-policy-oper">
      <policy-map-names
xmlns="http://cisco.com/ns/yang/Cisco-IOS-XR-event-manager-policy-map-oper">
       <policy-map-name>
         <policy-name>policy4</policy-name>
          <policy-name-xr>policy4</policy-name-xr>
          <policy-status>active</policy-status>
          <policy-occurrence>2</policy-occurrence>
          <policy-period>30</policy-period>
          <policy-triggered-count>0</policy-triggered-count>
          <event-count>2</event-count>
          <action-count>1</action-count>
          <policy-event-map>
            <event-name>event5</event-name>
            <event-status>active</event-status>
            <corr-status>false</corr-status>
            <reset-time>0</reset-time>
          </policy-event-map>
          <policy-event-map>
            <event-name>event4</event-name>
            <event-status>active</event-status>
            <corr-status>false</corr-status>
            <reset-time>0</reset-time>
          </policy-event-map>
          <policy-action-map>
            <action-name>action4</action-name>
            <checksum-enabled>SHA256</checksum-enabled>
          </policy-action-map>
          <multi-event-policy>true</multi-event-policy>
          <current-correlation-state>false</current-correlation-state>
```

```
          <multi-event-string>&quot;event4 AND event5&quot;</multi-event-string>
        </policy-map-name>
      </policy-map-names>
    </eem>
  </data>
 </rpc-reply>
```

Operational Data Model to Retrieve Events With Trigger Conditions

You use data model to view the details of a event-trigger conditions.

YANG Data Model	Equivalent CLI
Cisco-IOS-XR-ha-eem-policy-oper	show event manager event-trigger *event-trigger-name* **detailed** See, View Operational Status of Event Scripts, on page 158.

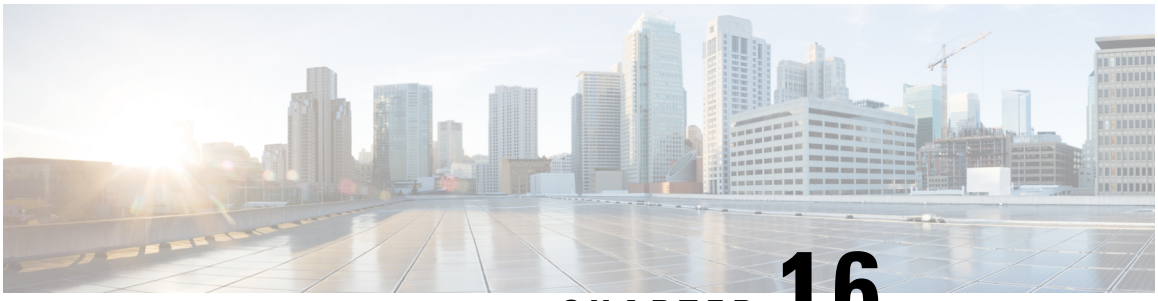
RPC Request:

```
<rpc xmlns:nc="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:netconf:base:1.0"
message-id="urn:uuid:77229832-1a44-47e4-b0cf-2c2066ac579a"><nc:get>
    <filter>
      <eem xmlns="http://cisco.com/ns/yang/Cisco-IOS-XR-ha-eem-policy-oper">
        <event-trigger-names
xmlns="http://cisco.com/ns/yang/Cisco-IOS-XR-event-manager-policy-map-oper">
          <event-trigger-name>
            <event-name>event4</event-name>
          </event-trigger-name>
        </event-trigger-names>
      </eem>
    </filter>
  </get>
</rpc>
```

RPC Response:

```
<?xml version="1.0" ?>
<rpc-reply message-id="urn:uuid:77229832-1a44-47e4-b0cf-2c2066ac579a"
xmlns="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:netconf:base:1.0"
xmlns:nc="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:netconf:base:1.0">
  <data>
    <eem xmlns="http://cisco.com/ns/yang/Cisco-IOS-XR-ha-eem-policy-oper">
      <event-trigger-names
xmlns="http://cisco.com/ns/yang/Cisco-IOS-XR-event-manager-policy-map-oper">
        <event-trigger-name>
          <event-name>event4</event-name>
          <event-name-xr>event4</event-name-xr>
          <event-status>active</event-status>
          <event-type>syslog</event-type>
          <eventesid>16</eventesid>
          <event-occurrence>NA</event-occurrence>
          <event-period>NA</event-period>
          <rate-limit>0</rate-limit>
          <event-triggered-count>2</event-triggered-count>
          <event-policy-reg-count>1</event-policy-reg-count>
          <event-policy-map>
            <policy-name>policy4</policy-name>
          </event-policy-map>
          <event-syslog-info>
            <pattern>%PKT_INFRA-LINK-3-UPDOWN : Interface GigabitEthernet0/0/0/4, changed
state to Down</pattern>
```

```
            <severity>ALL</severity>
          </event-syslog-info>
          <event-timer-info>
            <wd-info>
              <timer-value>0</timer-value>
            </wd-info>
          </event-timer-info>
          <event-telemetry-info>
            <sample-interval>0</sample-interval>
          </event-telemetry-info>
        </event-trigger-name>
      </event-trigger-names>
    </eem>
  </data>
</rpc-reply>
```



CHAPTER 16

Script Infrastructure and Sample Templates

Table 22: Feature History Table

Feature Name	Release Information	Description
Contextual Script Infrastructure	Release 7.3.2	When you create and run Python scripts on the router, this feature enables a contextual interaction between the scripts, the IOS XR software, and the external servers. This context, programmed in the script, uses Cisco IOS XR Python packages, modules, and libraries to: • obtain operational data from the router • set configurations and conditions • detect events in the network and trigger an appropriate action

You can create Python scripts and execute the scripts on routers running Cisco IOS XR software. The software supports the Python packages, libraries and dictionaries in the software image. For more informtion about the script types and to run the scripts using CLI commands To run the same actions using NETCONF RPCs,

Cisco IOS XR, Release 7.3.2 supports creating scripts using Python version 3.5.

Cisco IOS XR, Release 7.5.1 supports creating scripts using Python version 3.9.

- Cisco IOS XR Python Packages, on page 186
- Cisco IOS XR Python Libraries, on page 188
- Sample Script Templates, on page 190
- Use Automation Scripts to Interact with the Router via gNMI RPCs, on page 193
- Xrcli_helper Python Module, on page 197
- Xrlog Python Module, on page 200

Cisco IOS XR Python Packages

Table 23: Feature History Table

Feature Name	Release Information	Description
Upgraded IOS XR Python from Version 3.5 to Version 3.9	Release 7.5.1	This upgrade adds new modules and capabilities to create Python scripts and execute the scripts on routers running Cisco IOS XR software. Some of the modules added as part of the upgraded IOS XR Python 3.9 are: hashlib, idna, packaging, pyparsing, six, yaml.

With on-box Python scripting, automation scripts that was run from an external controller is now run on the router. To achieve this functionality, Cisco IOS XR software provides contextual support using SDK libraries and standard protocols.

The following Python third party application packages are supported by the scripting infrastructure and can be used to create automation scripts.

Package	Description	Support Introduced in Release
appdirs	Chooses the appropriate platform-specific directories for user data.	Release 7.3.2
array	Defines an object type that can compactly represent an array of basic values: characters, integers, floating point numbers.	Release 7.3.2
asn1crypto	Parses and serializes Abstract Syntax Notation One (ASN.1) data structures.	Release 7.3.2
chardet	Universal character encoding auto-detector.	Release 7.3.2
concurrent.futures	Provides a high-level interface for asynchronously executing callables.	Release 7.3.2
ecdsa	Implements Elliptic Curve Digital Signature Algorithm (ECDSA) cryptography library to create keypairs (signing key and verifying key), sign messages, and verify the signatures.	Release 7.3.2

Package	Description	Support Introduced in Release
enum	Enumerates symbolic names (members) bound to unique, constant values.	Release 7.3.2
email	Manages email messages.	Release 7.3.2
google.protobuf	Supports language-neutral, platform-neutral, extensible mechanism for serializing structured data.	Release 7.3.2
hashlib	Implements a common interface to many different secure hash and message digest algorithms.	Release 7.5.1
idna	Supports the Internationalized Domain Names in Applications (IDNA) protocol as specified in RFC 5891.	Release 7.5.1
ipaddress	Provides capability to create, manipulate and operate on IPv4 and IPv6 addresses and networks.	Release 7.3.2
jinja2	Supports adding functionality useful for templating environments.	Release 7.3.2
json	Provides a lightweight data interchange format.	Release 7.3.2
markupsafe	Implements a text object that escapes characters so it is safe to use in HTML and XML.	Release 7.3.2
netaddr	Enables system-independent network address manipulation and processing of Layer 3 network addresses.	Release 7.3.2
packaging	Add the necessary files and structure to create the package.	Release 7.5.1
pdb	Defines an interactive source code debugger for Python programs.	Release 7.3.2
pkg_resources	Provides runtime facilities for finding, introspecting, activating and using installed distributions.	Release 7.3.2

Package	Description	Support Introduced in Release
psutil	Provides library to retrieve information on running processes and system utilization such as CPU, memory, disks, sensors and processes.	Release 7.3.2
pyasn1	Provides a collection of ASN.1 modules expressed in form of pyasn1 classes. Includes protocols PDUs definition (SNMP, LDAP etc.) and various data structures (X.509, PKCS).	Release 7.3.2
pyparsing	Provides a library of classes to construct the grammar directly in Python code.	Release 7.5.1
requests	Allows sending HTTP/1.1 requests using Python.	Release 7.3.2
shellescape	Defines the function that returns a shell-escaped version of a Python string.	Release 7.3.2
six	Provides simple utilities for wrapping over differences between Python 2 and Python 3.	Release 7.5.1
subprocess	Spawns new processes, connects to input/output/error pipes, and obtain return codes.	Release 7.3.2
urllib3	HTTP client for Python.	Release 7.3.2
xmltodict	Makes working with XML feel like you are working with JSON.	Release 7.3.2
yaml	Provides a human-friendly format for structured data, that is both easy to write for humans and still parsable by computers.	Release 7.5.1

Cisco IOS XR Python Libraries

Cisco IOS XR software provides support for the following SDK libraries and standard protocols.

Library	Syntax

gnmi	To connect to gnmi client #
	`from iosxr.gnmi.gnmi_lib import GNMIClient`
	`gnmi = GNMIClient()`
	For more information, see Use Automation Scripts to Interact with the Router via gNMI RPCs, on page 193.

xrlog	`# To generate syslogs #`
	`from cisco.script_mgmt import xrlog`
	
	`syslog = xrlog.getSysLogger('template_exec')`
	For more information, see Xrlog Python Module, on page 200.

netconf	`#To connect to netconf client #`
	`from iosxr.netconf.netconf_lib import NetconfClient`
	
	`nc = NetconfClient(debug=True)`

xrclihelper	`# To run native xr cli and config commands`
	`from iosxr.xrcli.xrcli_helper import *`
	
	`helper = XrcliHelper(debug = True)`
	For more information, see Xrcli_helper Python Module, on page 197.

config_validation	`# To validate configuration #`
	`import cisco.config_validation as xr`
	For more information, see *Config Scripts* Chapter.

eem	`# For EEM operations #`
	`from iosxr import eem`
	For more information, see *EEM Scripts* Chapter.

precommit	`# For Precommit script operations #`
	`from cisco.script_mgmt import precommit`
	For more information, see *Precommit Scripts* Chapter.

Sample Script Templates

Table 24: Feature History Table

Feature Name	Release Information	Description
Github Repository for Automation Scripts	Release 7.5.1	You now have access to sample scripts and templates published on the Github repository. You can leverage these samples to use the python packages and libraries developed by Cisco to build your custom automation scripts for your network

Use these sample script templates based on script type to build your custom script.

To get familiar with IOS XR Python scripts, see the samples and templates on the Cisco Devnet developer program and Github repository.

Follow these instructions to download the sample scripts from the Github repository to your router, and run the scripts:

1. Clone the Github repository.

   ```
   $git clone https://github.com/CiscoDevNet/iosxr-ops.git
   ```

2. Copy the Python files to the router's harddisk or a remote repository.

Config Script

The following example shows a code snippet for config script. Use this snippet in your script to import the libraries required to validate configuration and also generate syslogs.

```
#Needed for config validation
import cisco.config_validation as xr

#Used for generating syslogs
from cisco.script_mgmt import xrlog
syslog = xrlog.getSysLogger('Add script name here')

def check_config(root):
    #Add config validations
    pass

xr.register_validate_callback([<Add config path here>],check_config)
```

Exec Script

Use this sample code snippet in your exec script to import Python libraries to connect to NETCONF client and also to generate syslogs.

```
#To connect to netconf client
from iosxr.netconf.netconf_lib import NetconfClient

#To generate syslogs
syslog = xrlog.getSysLogger('template_exec')
```

```
def test_exec():
    """
    Testcase for exec script
    """
    nc = NetconfClient(debug=True)
    nc.connect()
    #Netconf or processing operations
    nc.close()


if __name__ == '__main__':
    test_exec()
```

Process Script

Use the following sample code snippet to trigger a process script and perform various actions on the script. You can leverage this snippet to create your own custom process script. Any exec script can be used as a process script.

```
To trigger script
Step 1: Add and configure script as shown in README.MD

Step 2: Register the application with Appmgr

Configuraton:
appmgr process-script my-process-app
executable test_process.py
run args --threshold <threshold-value>

Step 3: Activate the registered application
appmgr process-script activate name my-process-app

Step 4: Check script status
show appmgr process-script-table

Router#show appmgr process-script-table
Name             Executable         Activated    Status     Restart Policy   Config Pending
---------------  ------------------ --------- ------------- ---------------- --------------
my-process-app   test_process.py      Yes       Running    On Failure            No

Step 5: More operations
Router#appmgr process-script ?
  activate    Activate process script
  deactivate  Deactivate process script
  kill        Kill process script
  restart     Restart process script
  start       Start process script
  stop        Stop process script
"""

#To connect to netconf client
from iosxr.netconf.netconf_lib import NetconfClient

#To generate syslogs
syslog = xrlog.getSysLogger('template_exec')

def test_process():
    """
    Testcase for process script
    """
    nc = NetconfClient(debug=True)
    nc.connect()
```

```
    #Netconf or any other operations
    nc.close()


if __name__ == '__main__':
    test_process()
```

EEM Script

You can leverage the following sample code to import Python libraries to create your custom eem script and also generate syslogs.

```
Required configuration:
User and AAA configuration

event manager event-trigger <trigger-name>
type syslog pattern "PROC_RESTART_NAME"

event manager action <action-name>
username <user>
type script script-name <script-name> checksum sha256 <checksum>

event manager policy-map policy1
trigger event <trigger-name>
action <action-name>

To verify:
Check for syslog EVENT SCRIPT EXECUTED: User restarted <process-name>

"""
#Needed for eem operations
from iosxr import eem

#Used to generate syslogs
from cisco.script_mgmt import xrlog
syslog = xrlog.getSysLogger(<add your script name here>)

# event_dict consists of details of the event
rc, event_dict = eem.event_reqinfo()

#You can process the information as needed and take action for example: generate a syslog.
#Syslog type can be emergency, alert, critical, error, exception, warning, notification,
info, debug

syslog.info(<Add you syslog here>)
```

Use Automation Scripts to Interact with the Router via gNMI RPCs

Table 25: Feature History Table

Feature Name	Release Information	Description
Automation Scripts for gNMI RPCs	Release 7.5.2	You can create automation scripts to connect to the gRPC Network Management Interface (gNMI) server and interact with the router using gNMI services. Based on gNMI-defined RPCs, you can use the automation script to connect to the gNMI server, manage the configuration of network devices, and query the operational data.

gRPC Network Management Interface (gNMI) is developed by Google. gNMI provides the mechanism to install, manipulate, and delete the configuration of network devices, and also to view operational data. The content provided through gNMI can be modeled using YANG. The supported operations are based on the gNMI defined RPCs:

```
from iosxr.gnmi.gnmi_lib import GNMIClient
gnmi = GNMIClient()

#Connect
gnmi.connect()

#Capabilities
cap = gnmi.capabilities()

#Get
get = gnmi.get(get_request)

#Set
set = gnmi.set(set_request)

#Disconnect
gnmi.disconnect()
```

- **gNMI Capabilities RPC:** This RPC allows the client to retrieve the gNMI capabilities that is supported by the target (router). This allows the target to validate the service version that is implemented and retrieve the set of models that the target supports. The models can then be specified in subsequent RPCs to restrict the set of data that is utilized. The `CapabilityRequest` RPC returns a response `CapabilityResponse` RPC.
- **gNMI GET RPC:** This RPC specifies how to retrieve one or more of the configuration attributes, state attributes or all attributes associated with a supported mode from a date tree. A `GetRequest` RPC is sent from a client to the target to retrieve values from the data tree. A `GetResponse` RPC is sent in response to the request.
- **gNMI SET RPC:** This RPC specifies how to set one or more configurable attributes associated with a supported model. A `SetRequest` RPC is sent from a client to a target to update the values in the data tree. The actions contained in a `SetRequest` RPC is treated as a single transaction. If any element of the

transaction fails, the entire transaction fails and is rolled back. A `SetResponse` RPC is sent in response to the request.

- **gNMI Connect RPC:** This RPC specifies how to initiaize a connection to the client.
- **gNMI Disconnect RPC:** This RPC specifies how to end the connection with the client.

Restrictions for the gNMI Protocol

The following restrictions apply to the gNMI protocol:

- Subscribe RPC services are not supported.
- Only JSON_IETF encoding for GET and SET requests is supported
- CLI over GNMI is not supported

Follow the procedure to use automation scripts to interact with the router via gNMI services:

Procedure

Step 1 Create script using the `GNMIClient` python module.

Example:

In this example, you create a script to connect with the router using gNMI capabilities.

```
from iosxr.gnmi.gnmi_lib import GNMIClient

gnmi = GNMIClient()
gnmi.connect()
print("Getting capabilities")
cap = gnmi.capabilities()
print("Get")
get_req = """
path: {
    elem: {
        name: "network-instances"
    }
    elem: {
        name: "network-instance"
        key: {
            key: "name"
            value: "vrf_1"
        }
    }
    origin: "openconfig-network-instance"
}
type: CONFIG
encoding: JSON_IETF
"""
get = gnmi.get(get_req)
print("Set")
set_req = """
prefix: <
    origin:"openconfig-interfaces"
>
update: <
path: <
            elem: <
```

```
                name: "interfaces"
            >
            elem: <
                name: "interface"
                key: <
                    key: "name"
                    value: "MgmtEth0/RP0/CPU0/0"
                >
            >
            elem: <
                name: "config"
            >
        >
        val: <
            json_ietf_val: '{"description":"Testing failover case: testrole200"}'
        >
>
"""
set = gnmi.set(set_req)
import pdb;pdb.set_trace()
```

Step 2 Configure gRPC.

Example:

```
Router#config
Router(config)#grpc
Router(config-grpc)#local connection
Router(config-grpc)#no-tls
Router(config-grpc)#commit
```

Step 3 Copy the script to the router.

Step 4 Verify that the script is available on the router.

Example:

```
Router#show script status detail
Tue Apr 12 23:10:50.453 UTC
=============================================================================================
 Name                      | Type     | Status           | Last Action | Action Time
---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------
 gnmi-sample-script.py     | exec     | Config Checksum  | NEW         | Tue Apr 12 10:18:23 2021
 ============================================================================================
Script Name        : gnmi-sample-scripy.py
Checksum           : 94336f3997521d6e1aec0ee6faab0233562d53d4de7b0092e80b53caed58414b
Script Description : View gNMI capabilities
History:
 --------
 1.   Action       : NEW
      Time         : Tue Apr 12 05:03:41 2021
      Description  : User action IN_CLOSE_WRITE
=============================================================================================
Router(config)#exit
```

Step 5 Add the script to the script management repository.

Example:

```
Router#script add <type> <location> <name>
```

In this example, you add an Exec script `gnmi-sample-script.py` to the router.

```
Router#script add exec /harddisk\: gnmi-sample-scripy.py
Tue Apr 18 16:16:46.427 UTC
```

```
Copying script from /harddisk:/gnmi-sample-scripy.py
gnmi-sample-scripy.py has been added to the script repository
```

Step 6 Configure the checksum.

Example:

```
Router(config)#script <type> <name> checksum SHA 256 <checksum>
```

In this example, you configure the checksum for the Exec script `gnmi-sample-script.py` to the router.

Example:

```
Router(config)#script exec gnmi-sample-script.py checksum SHA 256
94336f3997521d6e1aec0ee6faab0233562d53d4de7b0092e80b53caed58414b
Router(config)#commit
Router(config)#end
```

Step 7 Run the script.

Example:

```
Router#script run gnmi-sample-script.py
Tue Apr 18 16:17:46.427 UTC
Script run scheduled: gnmi-sample-script.py. Request ID: 1634055439
Getting capabilities
.................................
```

The following example shows the output of the gNMI `get` operation:

```
notification: <
  timestamp: 1649917466577514766
  update: <
    path: <
      origin: "openconfig-interfaces"
      elem: <
        name: "interfaces"
      >
      elem: <
        name: "interface"
        key: <
          key: "name"
          value: "TenGigE0/0/0/0"
        >
      >
    >
    val: <
      json_ietf_val: "{\n \"config\": {\n  \"name\": \"TenGigE0/0/0/0\",\n  \"type\":
\"iana-if-type:ethernetCsmacd\",\n  \"enabled\": false\n },\n \"openconfig-if-ethernet:
ethernet\": {\n  \"config\": {\n   \"auto-negotiate\": false\n  }\n }\n}\n"
    >
  >
  update: <
    path: <
      origin: "openconfig-interfaces"
      elem: <
        name: "interfaces"
      >
      elem: <
        name: "interface"
        key: <
          key: "name"
          value: "TenGigE0/0/0/1"
        >
      >
    >
```

```
    val: <
      json_ietf_val: "{\n \"config\": {\n  \"name\": \"TenGigE0/0/0/1\",\n  \"type\":
\"iana-if-type:ethernetCsmacd\",\n  \"enabled\": false\n },\n \"openconfig-if-ethernet:
ethernet\": {\n  \"config\": {\n   \"auto-negotiate\": false\n  }\n }\n}\n"
    >
------------------------------ Output truncated for brevity ----------------------------------------
```

Xrcli_helper Python Module

Overview of xrcli_helper Python Module

The `XrcliHelper` is a utility class designed to facilitate the execution of IOS-XR CLI commands and configuration changes programmatically. It provides methods to:

- Execute native IOS-XR commands.
- Apply configurations from files or strings.

Prerequisites of xrcli_helper Python Module

- Python 2.7 or higher.
- Ensure that you are on Cisco IOS XR Release 7.4.x or higher.
- Access to Cisco IOS XR device with AAA Authorization enabled. Use the **aaa authorization exec default group tacacs+ local** command to enable AAA Authorization.
- Ensure that the iosxr.xrcli.xrcli_helper module is available in your Python environment.

Import Library Information

To use the XrcliHelper class in your Python script, you need to import it from the appropriate module. The import statement provided allows you to bring the XrcliHelper class into your script so you can create instances of it and use its methods.

```
from iosxr.xrcli.xrcli_helper import XrcliHelper
```

Library/API Initialization

By initializing the XrcliHelper class, you establish the environment needed to execute IOS-XR commands and apply configurations programmatically. This serves as the initial step in automating network management tasks, enabling you to utilize the class's methods to efficiently interact with your IOS-XR devices.

```
<object name> = XrcliHelper([debug=True/False(default)])
```

This example shows how to initialize Xrclihelper class.

```
helper = XrcliHelper()
```

Xrcli_helper Script APIs

xrcli_exec

The xrcli_exec API executes IOS-XR exec commands to obtain the output.

Parameter

cmd: A String representing the IOS- XR exec command to be executed.

Result

The result of the xrcli_exec API is a dictionary containing:

- `status`: Indicates whether the command execution was `error` or `success`.
- `output`: The output of the executed command.

Example

The following example shows the sample output of xrcli_exec API:

```
>>> result = helper.xrcli_exec("show filesystem ")

>>> print(result)
{'output': '\n'
           '-------------------------------- show filesystem '
           '--------------------------------\n'
           'File Systems:\n'
           '\n'
           '      Size(b)      Free(b)        Type  Flags  Prefixes\n'
           '   4275265536   4274974720  flash-disk     rw  disk0:\n'
           '  67301322752  67266158592    harddisk     rw  harddisk:\n'
           '            0            0     network     rw  ftp:\n'
           '  60264796160  51056054272       flash     rw  /misc/config\n'
           '            0            0     network     rw  tftp:\n',
'status': 'success'}
```

xr_apply_config_file

The xr_apply_config_file API applies configuration to IOS-XR using a file.

Parameter

- `filename`: Path to a configuration file containing XR config commands with the following structure:

  ```
  !
  XR config command
  !
  end
  ```

- `comment`: A comment for the configuration commit, which will be visible in the output of **show configuration commit list detail**.

Result

The result of xr_apply_config_file is a dictionary specifying the effect of the configuration change:

- `status`: Indicates whether the configuration application was `error` or `success`.
- `output`:
  - If `status` is `error`: use the **show configuration failed** command.

- If `status` is `success`: use the **show configuration commit changes last 1** command.

Example

The following example shows sample output of xr_apply_config_file API.

```
[node0_RP0_CPU0:~]$more /harddisk:/noshut_int.cfg
!
interface hundredGigE 0/0/0/24
no shutdown
interface hundredGigE 0/0/0/25
no shutdown
!
end

>>> result = helper.xr_apply_config_file("/harddisk:/noshut_int.cfg")
>>> print(result)
{'output': '\n'
           '------------------ show configuration commit changes last 1 '
           '--------------------\n'
           '!! Building configuration...\n'
           '!! IOS XR Configuration x.y.z \n'
           'interface HundredGigE0/0/0/24\n'
           ' no shutdown\n'
           '!\n'
           'interface HundredGigE0/0/0/25\n'
           ' no shutdown\n'
           '!\n'
           'end\n'
           '\n',
'status': 'success'}
>>>
```

xr_apply_config_string

The xr_apply_config_string applies configuration to XR using a single line string.

Parameter

`cmd`: Single line string representing an XR config command.

`comment`:Reason for the config commit, visible in **show configuration commit list detail**.

Result

The result of xr_apply_config_string is a dictionary specifying the effect of the configuration change:

- **`status`**: Indicates whether the configuration application was `error` or `success`.
- **`output`**:
  - If `status` is `error`: use the **show configuration failed** command.
  - If `status` is `success`: use the **show configuration commit changes last 1** command.

Example

The following example shows sample output of xr_apply_config_file API.

```
>>> cmd = """
... interface HundredGigE0/0/0/25
... description "shut down by scriptx"
... shut
```

```
... """
>>> result = helper.xr_apply_config_string(cmd)
>>> print(result)
{'output': '\n'
           '------------------- show configuration commit changes last 1 '
           '--------------------\n'
           '!! Building configuration...\n'
           '!! IOS XR Configuration x.y.z\n'
           'interface HundredGigE0/0/0/25\n'
           ' description "shut down by scriptx"\n'
           ' shutdown\n'
           '!\n'
           'end\n'
           '\n',
'status': 'success'
>>>
```

user

The user is an XrcliHelper Object Attribute (not API) which contains the username to authorize the XR commands.

Example

The following example shows sample output of `user`.

```
Example:

>>> helper.user
'cisco'
```

toggle_debug

The toggle_debug enables or disables debug logging.

Example

The following example shows sample output of `toggle_debug`.

```
>>> helper.toggle_debug(True)
>>>
```

Xrlog Python Module

Overview of Xrlog Python Module

The `xrlog` Python module is a utility designed for generating syslog messages and script logs within Cisco IOS XR environments. It provides methods to do the following:

- Module to generate XR syslog messages from scripts.
- Provides a logger for generating script logs.

Prerequisites of Xrlog Python Module

- Python 2.7 or higher.
- Ensure that you are on Cisco IOS XR Release 7.4.x or higher.

- Ensure that the `cisco.script_mgmt.xrlog` is available in your Python environment.

Import Library Information

To use the `xrlog` module in your Python script, you need to import it from the appropriate module. The import statement provided allows you to bring the `xrlog` functionalities into your script so you can create instances of syslog and script loggers.

```
from cisco.script_mgmt import xrlog
```

Library/API Initialization

By initializing the `xrlog` module, you establish the environment needed to generate syslog messages and script logs programmatically. This serves as the initial step in automating logging tasks, enabling you to utilize the module's methods to efficiently log events and messages.

```
<object_name> = xrlog.getSysLogger([logger_name [default: root]])
<object_name> = xrlog.getScriptLogger([logger_name [default: root]])
```

Example:

This is the example of generating syslog and script logs.

```
syslog = xrlog.getSysLogger('myscript')
log = xrlog.getScriptLogger('myscript')
```

getSysLogger Script APIs

The `getSysLogger` API returns a syslogger object with APIs to print to XR syslog.

Parameter

name: A string representing the module name of the syslogger. This parameter is optional, and the default value is "root".

Result

The result of the `getSysLogger` API is a syslogger object.

Result

The result of the `alert` API is the message being logged to the XR syslog with severity level 1.

Syslogger APIs

The following are the list of Syslogger APIs:

- emergency
- alert
- critical
- error
- warning
- notification

- info
- debug
- log
- setlevel

emergency

The `emergency` API prints a message string to the XR syslog with severity level 0, indicating that the system is unusable.

Parameters

- **self**: The syslogger object.
- **msg_string**: A string representing the syslog message to be printed.

Result

The result of the `emergency` API is the message being logged to the XR syslog with severity level 0.

Example

The following example shows how to use the `emergency` API to log a message indicating a system emergency and the system logging message that you can see on the router.

```
>>> syslog.emergency("script generated syslog message")
RP/0/RP0/CPU0: scripting_python3[67965]: %OS-SCRIPT_LOG-0-EMERGENCY : Script-myscript:
script generated syslog message
```

alert

The `alert` API prints a message string to the XR syslog with severity level 1, indicating that immediate action is needed.

After getting the object, the following are the list of APIs that belong to that object.

Parameters

- **self**: The syslogger object.
- **msg_string**: A string representing the syslog message to be printed.

Example

The following example shows how to use the `alert` API to log a message indicating that immediate action is needed and the system logging message that you can see on the router:

```
>>> syslog.alert("script generated syslog message")
RP/0/RP0/CPU0: scripting_python3[67965]: %OS-SCRIPT_LOG-1-ALERT : Script-myscript: script
generated syslog message
```

critical

The `critical` API prints a message string to the XR syslog with severity level 2, indicating critical conditions.

Parameters

- **self**: The syslogger object.

- **msg_string**: A string representing the syslog message to be printed.

Result

The result of the `critical` API is the message being logged to the XR syslog with severity level 2.

Example

The following example shows how to use the `critical` API to log a message indicating critical conditions and the system logging message that you can see on the router:

```
>>> syslog.critical("script generated syslog message")
RP/0/RP0/CPU0: scripting_python3[67965]: %OS-SCRIPT_LOG-2-CRITICAL : Script
```

error

The `error` API prints a message string to the XR syslog with severity level 3, indicating error conditions.

Parameters

- **self**: The syslogger object.
- **msg_string**: A string representing the syslog message to be printed.

Result

The result of the `error` API is the message being logged to the XR syslog with severity level 3.

Example

The following example shows how to use the `error` API to log a message indicating error conditions and the system logging message that you can see on the router:

```
>>> syslog.error("script generated syslog message")
RP/0/RP0/CPU0: scripting_python3[67965]: %OS-SCRIPT_LOG-3-ERROR : Script-myscript: script
generated syslog message
```

warning

The `warning` API prints a message string to the XR syslog with severity level 4, indicating a warning condition.

Parameters

- **self**: The syslogger object.
- **msg_string**: A string representing the syslog message to be printed.

Result

The result of the `warning` API is the message being logged to the XR syslog with severity level 4.

Example

The following example shows how to use the `warning` API to log a message indicating a warning condition and the system logging message that you can see on the router:

```
>>> syslog.warning("script generated syslog message")
RP/0/RP0/CPU0: scripting_python3[67965]: %OS-SCRIPT_LOG-4-WARNING : Script-myscript: script
 generated syslog message
```

notification

The `notification` API prints a message string to the XR syslog with severity level 5, indicating a normal but significant condition.

Parameters

- **self**: The syslogger object.
- **msg_string**: A string representing the syslog message to be printed.

Result

The result of the `notification` API is the message being logged to the XR syslog with severity level 5.

Example

The following example shows how to use the `notification` API to log a message indicating a normal but significant condition and the system logging message that you can see on the router:

```
>>> syslog.notification("script generated syslog message")
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:scripting_python3[67965]: %OS-SCRIPT_LOG-5-NOTIFICATION : Script-myscript:
script generated syslog message
```

info

The `info` API prints a message string to the XR syslog with severity level 6, indicating an informational message only.

Parameters

- **self**: The syslogger object.
- **msg_string**: A string representing the syslog message to be printed.

Result

The result of the `info` API is the message being logged to the XR syslog with severity level 6.

Example

The following example shows how to use the `info` API to log an informational message and the system logging message that you can see on the router:

```
>>> syslog.info("script generated syslog message")
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:scripting_python3[67965]: %OS-SCRIPT_LOG-6-INFO : Script-myscript: script
generated syslog message
```

debug

The `debug` API prints a message string to the XR syslog with severity level 7, indicating a debugging message only.

Parameters

- **self**: The syslogger object.
- **msg_string**: A string representing the syslog message to be printed.

Result

The result of the `debug` API is the message being logged to the XR syslog with severity level 7.

Example

The following example shows how to use the `debug` API to log a debugging message and the system logging message that you can see on the router:

```
>>> syslog.debug("script generated syslog message")
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:scripting_python3[67965]: %OS-SCRIPT_LOG-7-DEBUG : Script-myscript: script
generated syslog message
```

log

The `log` API prints a message string to the XR syslog at the provided severity level.

Parameters

- **self**: The syslogger object.
- **level**: An integer representing the syslog logging level.
- **msg_string**: A string representing the syslog message to be printed.

Result

The result of the `log` API is the message being logged to the XR syslog at the specified severity level.

Example

The following example shows how to use the `log` API to log a message at a specified severity level and the system logging message that is generated on the router:

```
syslog.log(xrlog.WARNING, "script generated syslog message")
RP/0/RP0/CPU0: scripting_python3[67965]: %OS-SCRIPT_LOG-4-WARNING : Script-myscript: script
 generated syslog message
>>> syslog.log(30, "script generated syslog message")
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:scripting_python3[67965]: %OS-SCRIPT_LOG-4-WARNING : Script-myscript: script
 generated syslog message
```

setlevel

The `setLevel` API sets the level of messages that should be written to syslogs. Messages with a lower level than the specified level will be discarded.

Parameters

level: An integer representing the syslog logging level.

Result

The result of the `setLevel` API is that only messages with a severity level equal to or higher than the specified level will be logged to the XR syslog.

Example

The following example shows how to use the `setLevel` API to set the logging level:

```
syslog = xrlog.getSysLogger('myscript')
syslog.setLevel(4)
```

Script Logger API

getScriptLogger

The `getScriptLogger` API returns a Python Logger object.

Parameters

name: A string representing the module name of the logger. This parameter is optional.

Result

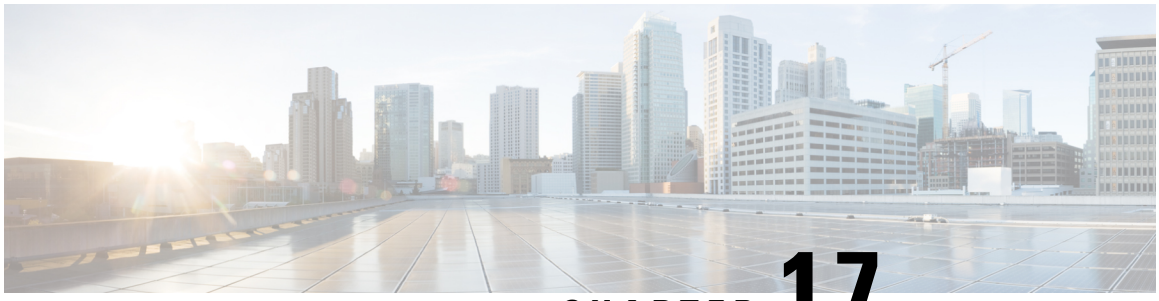
The result of the `getScriptLogger` API is a Python Logger object.

For more information on Python Logger, refer to the Python logger documentation.

Example

The following example shows how to initialize a script logger using the `getScriptLogger` API:

```
log = xrlog.getScriptLogger('myscript')
```



CHAPTER 17

Troubleshoot Automation Scripts

This chapter provides information about troubleshooting the automation scripts.

- Collect Debug Logs, on page 207

Collect Debug Logs

Table 26: Feature History Table

Feature Name	Release Information	Description
Debug Automation Scripts	Release 7.5.1	Use this feature to collect logs that contain debug information for ltraces and tech-support data. These logs aid in troubleshooting whenever the scripts are not working as expected. This feature introduces the **show tech-support script** command.

To automatically run **show** commands that display the debugging information specific to automation scripts, use the **show tech-support script** command in EXEC mode.

- **show version**
- **show platform**
- **show logging**
- **show running-config**
- **show install active**
- **show processes blocked location all**
- **show processes script_watcher_main location all**
- **show processes script_agent_main location all**
- **show processes checksum_verifier_main location all**

- **show memory summary location all**
- **show tech cfgmgr**
- **show tech eem**
- **show tech appmgr**
- **show script status detail**
- **show script execution detail**

In addition, the debug command collects the following data:

- All the script management log files in `/var/log` directory
- List all the files under `/pkg/lib/python3/` directroy
- Collects data about top processes consuming high CPU resources
- List all the processes initiated by the script manager
- Collect information about `/harddisk:/mirror/script-mgmt` directory

Run the debug command to collect information about the automation scripts (in zip format):

```
Router#show tech-support script
Mon Nov 15 23:28:46.849 UTC
++ Show tech start time: 2021-Nov-15.232847.UTC ++
Mon Nov 15 23:28:47 UTC 2021 Waiting for gathering to complete
.............................
Mon Nov 15 23:30:19 UTC 2021 Compressing show tech output
Show tech output available at
0/RP0/CPU0 : /harddisk:/showtech/showtech-script-2021-Nov-15.232847.UTC.tgz
++ Show tech end time: 2021-Nov-15.233019.UTC ++
```

View the collected debug zip files:

```
Router#dir harddisk:/showtech
Mon Nov 15 00:32:17.218 UTC

Directory of harddisk:/showtech
262146 -rw-rw-rw-. 1 1101085 Nov 15 23:24 showtech-script-2021-Nov-15.232322.UTC.tgz
262147 -rw-rw-rw-. 1 1143339 Nov 15 23:30 showtech-script-2021-Nov-15.232847.UTC.tgz

70553000 kbytes total (66887640 kbytes free)
```

Untar the collected zip file to view the list of debug log files:

```
Router#run
Mon Nov 15 00:32:29.724 UTC
[node0_RP0_CPU0:~]$cd /harddisk\:/showtech/
[node0_RP0_CPU0:/harddisk:/showtech]$ls -ltr
total 2196
-rw-rw-rw-. 1 root iosxr 1101085 Nov 15 23:24 showtech-script-2021-Nov-15.232322.UTC.tgz
-rw-rw-rw-. 1 root iosxr 1143339 Nov 15 23:30 showtech-script-2021-Nov-15.232847.UTC.tgz

[node0_RP0_CPU0:/harddisk:/showtech]$gunzip showtech-script-2021-Nov-15.232847.UTC.tgz
[node0_RP0_CPU0:/harddisk:/showtech]$ls -l
total 2612
-rw-rw-rw-. 1 root iosxr 1101085 Nov 15 23:24 showtech-script-2021-Nov-15.232322.UTC.tgz
-rw-rw-rw-. 1 root iosxr 1572864 Nov 15 23:30 showtech-script-2021-Nov-15.232847.UTC.tar
```

```
[node0_RP0_CPU0:/harddisk:/showtech]$tar -xvf showtech-script-2021-Nov-15.232847
showtech-script-2021-Nov-15.232847.UTC/
showtech-script-2021-Nov-15.232847.UTC/node0_RP0_CPU0-ps-grep-python-output
showtech-script-2021-Nov-15.232847.UTC/node0_RP0_CPU0-script_action_log
showtech-script-2021-Nov-15.232847.UTC/node0_RP0_CPU0-script-mgmt/
showtech-script-2021-Nov-15.232847.UTC/node0_RP0_CPU0-script-mgmt/config/
showtech-script-2021-Nov-15.232847.UTC/node0_RP0_CPU0-script-mgmt/logs/
showtech-script-2021-Nov-15.232847.UTC/node0_RP0_CPU0-script-mgmt/logs/exec_sample_script.py_exec_1625009314/
showtech-script-2021-Nov-15.232847.UTC/node0_RP0_CPU0-script-mgmt/logs/exec_sample_script.py_exec_1625009314/stderr.log
showtech-script-2021-Nov-15.232847.UTC/node0_RP0_CPU0-script-mgmt/logs/exec_sample_script.py_exec_1625009314/stdout.log
showtech-script-2021-Nov-15.232847.UTC/node0_RP0_CPU0-script-mgmt/exec/
showtech-script-2021-Nov-15.232847.UTC/node0_RP0_CPU0-script-mgmt/exec/exec_sample_script.py
showtech-script-2021-Nov-15.232847.UTC/node0_RP0_CPU0-script-mgmt/process/
showtech-script-2021-Nov-15.232847.UTC/node0_RP0_CPU0-script-mgmt/eem/
showtech-script-2021-Nov-15.232847.UTC/node0_RP0_CPU0-script-mgmt/.script-mgmt/
showtech-script-2021-Nov-15.232847.UTC/node0_RP0_CPU0-script-mgmt/.script-mgmt/request_queue.json
showtech-script-2021-Nov-15.232847.UTC/node0_RP0_CPU0-script-mgmt/.script-mgmt/script_db.json
showtech-script-2021-Nov-15.232847.UTC/node0_RP1_CPU0-ps-grep-python-output
showtech-script-2021-Nov-15.232847.UTC/cfg-node0_RP0_CPU0.tar
showtech-script-2021-Nov-15.232847.UTC/node0_RP0_CPU0-script_watcher_log
showtech-script-2021-Nov-15.232847.UTC/node0_RP1_CPU0-top-output-2
showtech-script-2021-Nov-15.232847.UTC/node0_RP1_CPU0.tech.gz
showtech-script-2021-Nov-15.232847.UTC/system.tech.gz
showtech-script-2021-Nov-15.232847.UTC/node0_RP0_CPU0-top-output-2
showtech-script-2021-Nov-15.232847.UTC/node0_RP0_CPU0-script_agent_log
showtech-script-2021-Nov-15.232847.UTC/node0_RP1_CPU0-script-mgmt/
showtech-script-2021-Nov-15.232847.UTC/node0_RP1_CPU0-script-mgmt/config/
showtech-script-2021-Nov-15.232847.UTC/node0_RP1_CPU0-script-mgmt/logs/
showtech-script-2021-Nov-15.232847.UTC/node0_RP1_CPU0-script-mgmt/logs/exec_sample_script.py_exec_1625009314/
showtech-script-2021-Nov-15.232847.UTC/node0_RP1_CPU0-script-mgmt/logs/exec_sample_script.py_exec_1625009314/stderr.log
showtech-script-2021-Nov-15.232847.UTC/node0_RP1_CPU0-script-mgmt/logs/exec_sample_script.py_exec_1625009314/stdout.log
showtech-script-2021-Nov-15.232847.UTC/node0_RP1_CPU0-script-mgmt/exec/
showtech-script-2021-Nov-15.232847.UTC/node0_RP1_CPU0-script-mgmt/exec/exec_sample_script.py
showtech-script-2021-Nov-15.232847.UTC/node0_RP1_CPU0-script-mgmt/process/
showtech-script-2021-Nov-15.232847.UTC/node0_RP1_CPU0-script-mgmt/eem/
showtech-script-2021-Nov-15.232847.UTC/node0_RP1_CPU0-script-mgmt/.script-mgmt/
showtech-script-2021-Nov-15.232847.UTC/node0_RP1_CPU0-script-mgmt/.script-mgmt/request_queue.json
showtech-script-2021-Nov-15.232847.UTC/node0_RP1_CPU0-script-mgmt/.script-mgmt/script_db.json
showtech-script-2021-Nov-15.232847.UTC/node0_RP0_CPU0.tech.gz
showtech-script-2021-Nov-15.232847.UTC/node0_RP0_CPU0-top-output-1
showtech-script-2021-Nov-15.232847.UTC/node0_RP0_CPU0-script_control_log
showtech-script-2021-Nov-15.232847.UTC/node0_RP0_CPU0-script_manager_log
showtech-script-2021-Nov-15.232847.UTC/node0_RP1_CPU0-top-output-1
showtech-script-2021-Nov-15.232847.UTC/node0_RP0_CPU0-script_oper_log
```